

10.

Correct the following sentences:

- (1) That is one of the girls who has stolen eggs.
- (2) It is me who am speaking on this topic.
- (3) That is one of the interesting books that has appeared this year.
- (4) This is the only one of his stories that are worth reading.
- (5) It is I who is answering the question.
- (6) The boy which is sitting in the corner reads in my class.
- (7) She who walk in the evening gets energy.
- (8) The sun whom rays give life to earth is a source of energy.
- (9) This is the same toy which I gave you.
- (10) Uneasy lies the head which wears the crown.
- (11) All which glitters is not silver.
- (12) Man is the only animal which can use his intelligence.
- (13) That is the best which you can do.
- (14) The girl and her cat who had entered my house were locked.
- (15) I have read Milton's poems who was a romantic poet.

11

Correct the following sentences:

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) You self did this work. | (2) Who do you want? |
| (3) Neither Sushma nor Indu were wanted. | (4) The girls absented from the class. |
| (5) One should do his duty. | (6) I was not so rich as him. |
| (7) This is the boy whose all admire. | (8) This is the girl whom marks are highest. |
| (9) Either of these roads lead to the hospital. | (10) Yourself admitted the guilt. |
| (11) You, he and I are in the wrong. | (12) You are stronger than me. |
| (13) It is me. | (14) Only you and him can do that work. |
| (15) If I were him, I should help you. | |

12

Correct the following sentences:

- (1) This is mine pen.
- (2) Between you and I, Mohan is a thief.
- (3) Let me take your leave .
- (4) He cannot bearing separation from me.
- (5) Good girls like you and she should not abuse others.
- (6) This pen is superior to your.
- (7) Every men and every women should obey their elders.
- (8) He availed of the chance.
- (9) He will not object to me going there.
- (10) He is a good player is not it ?

Spotting Errors (Pronoun)

13.

Read the following sentences to find where, there is any error in any part:

- (1) The board of directors (a)/want the facilities (b)/of car and accommodation (c)/or itself. (d)
- (2) Every teacher (a)/and every student (b)/of this school is determined to do their best (c)/for the benefit of all. (d)
- (3) The officer (a)/as well as the (b)/clerks absented themselves (c)/from the office. (d)
- (4) There were (a)/five active workers (b)/and three lazy one (c)/in the factory. (d)
- (5) There is none (a)/who can support you (b)/in this crucial period. (c)
- (6) Any of the (a)/two photos which reflect (b)/the natural beauty of Kashmir (c)/is worthseeing. (d)
- (7) The guests (a)/whom we were talking (b)/about have arrived (c)/are my relatives. (d)
- (8) He introduced (a)/to the chairman as (b)/the president of the (c)/workers association. (d)
- (9) As a student (a)/of arts (b)/you are much better (c)/than him. (d)
- (10) He hates everybody (a)/and everything who (b)/reminds him (c)/of his blunder. (d)

14

Read the following sentences to find where, there is any error in any part:

- (1) Whomever (a)/does not come in time (b)/will not be allowed (c)/to mark his presence. (d)
- (2) The six partners (a)/are at daggers drawn (b)/so they do not talk (c)/ to each other. (d)
- (3) If some one has (a)/completed the work (b)/he may leave (c)/No error.(d)
- (4) She lent me (a)/some money with the condition (b)/that I should return (c)/the same within a month. (d)
- (5) The teacher instructed (a)/ the peon to let (b)/ the students and I (c)/ go into the office of Principal. (d)
- (6) The candidate (a)/ being a commerce graduate (b)/she is eligible (c)/for the post of accountant. (d)
- (7) In all circumstances (a)/I have helped him (b)/and he knows. (c)
- (8) I don't appreciate (a)/him who laugh (b)/at of thers without (c)/ any reason. (d)
- (9) You and myself (a)/ will enjoy the function (b)/being arranged in honour of (c)/ the new Principal. (d)
- (10) He asked for (a)/ permission to go to the cinema (b)/ but his mother(c)/did not give. (d)



SOLUTIONS



TEST YOURSELF Exercises

Solution TYE 01

- (1) Let you and me go to play.
- (2) There is close relation between him and me.
- (3) You, he and I have done our job.
- (4) You and he could not complete your work.
- (5) He and I have fastened our belts.
- (6) You, he and I were present in the function.
- (7) You and I are strangers.
- (8) I and you are responsible for this loss.
- (9) I and he were the main accused.
- (10) I, you and he must beg sorry for the misconduct.

Solution TYE 02

- (1) None of these four vehicles will do.
- (2) Either of the two girls can solve this puzzle.
- (3) Anyone of the three students is responsible for the loss.
- (4) Neither of the two girls could complete the job.
- (5) One should obey one's elders.
- (6) One should respect not only one's own parents but also others.'
- (7) One should take care not to make oneself obnoxious to others.
- (8) Each girl and every madam tried her best to finish the work before 7 P.M.
- (9) Every man and every woman has his own fascinations.
- (10) Every leader and every citizen has a duty towards his country.



- (a) वाक्य संख्या (1) से (4) : Neither/ Either/ Both का प्रयोग दो के लिए एवं None/No one/Any one/All का प्रयोग दो से अधिक के लिए किया जाता है।
- (b) वाक्य संख्या (5) से (7) : One's या Oneself का प्रयोग होगा। His या Himself का प्रयोग करना गलत है।
- (c) वाक्य संख्या (8) से (10) : यदि दो Nouns आपस में and से जोड़े गए हैं एवं उनसे पूर्व Each/Every लगता है तो Singular Verb एवं Singular Pronoun (his/her) का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

Solution TYE 03

- (1) Each of the employees has to arrange his own vehicle.
- (2) Every one of them was given his table and chair.
- (3) Either Ramesh or Sita has left his/her (or this) tiffin box.
- (4) Either the teacher or the students have left their classroom unlocked.
- (5) Please take the buffalo to its shed.
- (6) The cow has hurt its legs.
- (7) It is easy to get her agree.
- (8) It was he who arrived first in the meeting.
- (9) This is to certify that Mr. A is our employee.
- (10) It is 8 O'Clock by my watch.

Solution TYE 04

- (1) All that she said was incorrect.
- (2) Who was the girl that came to meet you?
- (3) What is his opinion about the work that you have completed?
- (4) I always purchase the item that is the best in the market.
- (5) This is the same shirt that I saw in the shop.
- (6) Who is she that can abuse me like this?
- (7) Only those employees should be promoted who are sincere.
- (8) The leaders who do not love their country are not respected.
- (9) Those who live in glass houses should not throw stones at others.
- (10) What was the reply that she submitted?

Solution TYE 05

- (1) It was I who telephoned you yesterday.
- (2) The girl who you spoke to in the office, is my friend.
- (3) My brother and I are glad to get your greetings.
- (4) I am not one of them who cannot keep their promise.
- (5) It is not we who are responsible for the delay.

- (6) They admired his wife and him.
- (7) What place are you going to?
- (8) Which house do you live in?
- (9) She has absented herself from duty today again.
- (10) I could not avail myself of the opportunity I got last year.
- (11) The treatment received by me was such as I never expected.
- (12) His expectation is the same as is hers.
- (13) One cannot bear one's insult like this.
- (14) My house is bigger than theirs.
- (15) This is a secret between you and me.

Solution TYE 06

- | | | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|------------|-------------|
| (1) which, | (2) who, | (3) Where, | (4) Which, | (5) When, |
| (6) whom, | (7) which, | (8) what, | (9) who, | (10) whose. |

Solution TYE 07

- | | | | | |
|------------|-----------|-----------|------------|-------------|
| (1) whose, | (2) whom, | (3) Who, | (4) What, | (5) that, |
| (6) whose, | (7) that, | (8) whom, | (9) which, | (10) which. |

Solution TYE 08

- | | | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| (1) which, | (2) that, | (3) where, | (4) when, | (5) whom, |
| (6) who, | (7) which, | (8) who, | (9) whose, | (10) whom. |

Solution TYE 09

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) Everyone should obey his parents. | (2) Sita must do her duties. |
| (3) Each girl and every student was busy in work. | (4) Either Pramod or Narendra has learnt his lesson. |
| (5) Nisha or Sushma was teaching her son. | (6) Either Rohan or his friends forgot their books. |
| (7) You, he and I are friends. | (8) You, he and I went to Nehru garden yesterday. |
| (9) Manish and I should learn our lessons. | (10) You and Sushma should read your book. |
| (11) You, he and I must do our work. | (12) Ram and Shyam help each other. |
| (13) Three children love one another. | (14) Two friends love each other. |
| (15) It is I who am your friend. | |

Solution TYE 10

- (1) That is one of the girls who have stolen eggs.
- (2) It is I who am speaking on this topic.
- (3) That is one of the interesting books that have appeared this year.
- (4) This is the only one of his stories that is worth reading.
- (5) It is I who am answering the question.
- (6) The boy who is sitting is the corner reads in my class.
- (7) She who walks in the evening gets.
- (8) The sun whose rays give life to earth is a source of energy.
- (9) This is the same toy that I gave you.
- (10) Uneasy lies the head that wears the crown.
- (11) All that glitters is not silver.
- (12) Man is the only animal that can use his intelligence.
- (13) That is the best that you can do.
- (14) The girl and her cat that had entered my house were locked.
- (15) I have read poems of Milton who was a romantic poet.

Solution TYE 11

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) You yourself did this work. | (2) Whom do you want? |
| (3) Neither Sushma nor Indu was wanted. | (4) The girls absented themselves from the class. |
| (5) One should do one's duty. | (6) I was not so rich as he. |
| (7) This is the boy whom all admire. | (8) This is the girl whose marks are highest. |
| (9) Either of these roads leads to the hospital. | (10) You yourself admitted the guilt. |
| (11) I, he and you are in the wrong. | (12) You are stronger than I. |
| (13) It is I. | (14) Only you and he can do that work. |
| (15) If I were he I should help you. | |

Solution TYE 12

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) This is my pen. | (2) Between you and me, Mohan is a thief. |
| (3) Let me take leave of you. | (4) He cannot bear separation from me. |
| (5) Good girls like you and her should not abuse others. | |
| (6) This pen is superior to yours. | (7) Every man and every woman should obey his their elders. |
| (8) He availed himself of the chance. | (9) He will not object to my going there. |
| (10) He is a good player, isn't it? | |

Solution TYE 13

- (1) (d) 'itself' की जगह 'themselves' आएगा। यहाँ Board of Directors का प्रयोग as Collective Noun की तरह नहीं हुआ है।
- (2) (c) 'their' की जगह 'his' आएगा। जब दो Singular Noun, Each एवं Every से जुड़े होते हैं, तो Singular Verb एवं Possessive Pronoun भी Singular (यहाँ his) प्रयोग होता है।
- (3) (c) 'themselves' की जगह 'his' आएगा। यहाँ Subject 'officer' है जब दो Nouns: as well as, besides, in addition etc. से संयुक्त होते हैं तो Verb एवं Pronoun पहले वाले Noun के अनुसार प्रयोग होते हैं।
- (4) (c) 'lazy one' की जगह 'lazy ones' होना चाहिए। One का प्रयोग Singular के लिए एवं ones का प्रयोग plural हेतु किया जाता है।
- (5) (b) 'Who' की जगह 'that' का प्रयोग करें। याद रखें, All/none/same/only/ के साथ सामान्यतया Relative Pronoun 'that' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे:
- All that glitter is not gold. He is the same man that supported me.
- Same के साथ Relative Pronoun 'as' का प्रयोग किया जाएगा, यदि इसके बाद Verb का प्रयोग नहीं हुआ है। This is the same house as mine.
- (6) (a) 'Any' की जगह 'Either' का प्रयोग होगा। Either का प्रयोग दो के लिए होता है।
- (7) (b) 'Whom' की जगह 'who' का प्रयोग किया जाएगा। **Whom**—Objective Case है, **Who**—subject Case है।



जब किसी वाक्य में Who एवं Whom के प्रयोग के मध्य कोई confusion है तो आप, वाक्य में subject एवं verb की संख्या गिन लें। यदि verb की संख्या, subject से अधिक है तो 'who' का प्रयोग करें। यहाँ यह भी ध्यान रखना होगा कि 'and' से संयुक्त verbs एक ही subject के लिए प्रयुक्त होते हैं। जैसे:

She came and spoke to me. यहाँ verb came एवं spoke, 'and' से संयुक्त है। अतः एक ही subject के लिए प्रयुक्त है। वाक्य सं (7) को देखें :

The guests whom we were talking about have arrived, are my relatives.

s-1 s-2 v-2 v-3 v-1

यहाँ दो subject हैं, guests एवं we जो क्रमशः are एवं were, verbs को लेते हैं। तीसरी verb है have arrived इसके लिए कोई subject नहीं है। अतः इस वाक्य में whom की जगह who आएगा, जो subject का कार्य करता है।

Other example

The candidates whom we have chosen are sincere and energetic.

s-1 s-2 v-2 v-1

यहाँ whom का प्रयोग सही है। Here are two verbs and two subjects so the use of whom is justified.



कुछ verbs, जैसे *absent, present, enjoy, introduce, confine, devote, sacrifice, prostrate etc, transitive verbs* हैं जिनके बाद या तो कोई Object आता है या Reflexive Pronoun का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे :

She enjoyed the picnic. She enjoyed herself in the picnic. अन्य उदाहरण ;

He prostrated before the king who has returned after two years.

यहाँ *prostrated* एक transitive verb है।

अतः इसके बाद *himself* लगाना होगा।

He prostrated himself before the king who has returned after two years.

- (8) (a) introduced के बाद Reflexive Pronoun *himself* भी लगाना होगा।
- (9) (d) 'him' की जगह 'he' ही आएगा। 'than' के बाद यदि दो Subjects के मध्य तुलना की जाए तो nominative case का प्रयोग होगा न कि object case का। 'he' nominative case एवं 'him' object case है। देखें :
She was more surprised than me to see the circus girl coming towards us.
 यहाँ भी 'me' की जगह I का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि तुलना दो Subjects, 'she' एवं I में है।
- (10) (b) 'Who' की जगह 'Which' या 'That' का प्रयोग करना होगा।
 जब किसी Pronoun के पहले आए दो Noun, and से संयुक्त होते हैं तो Pronoun अपने पास आए Noun से govern होता है।
 यहाँ पास वाला Noun, everything है अतः यहाँ 'Which' या 'That' का प्रयोग होगा।

Solution TYE 14

- (1) (a) 'Whoever' की जगह 'Whoever' होगा। Whomever, Objective case है जबकि, Whoever Nominative case है जो अपने साथ Verb, does not come ले रहा है। Also see the explanation to question no. 7.
- (2) (d) 'Each other' की जगह 'one another' होगा। each other का सामान्यतया प्रयोग दो के लिए किया जाता है।
- (3) (d) वाक्य सही है।
- (4) (d) 'the same' की जगह 'it' आयेगा। 'the same' का प्रयोग हमेशा एक Adjective की तरह होता है। 'the same' का प्रयोग Pronoun की तरह करना गलत है। जैसे :
 (1) This is the same pen as mine. (2) It is the same chair as yours.
- (5) (c) 'I' की जगह 'me' होगा। Let के साथ Pronoun हमेशा Objective case में आता है। जैसे :
 (1) Let you and me go there. (2) Let you and him prepare a proposal.
- (6) (c) She को delete करें क्योंकि यहाँ She लगाने की आवश्यकता नहीं है। This is the pen, which I lost it yesterday. यहाँ भी it का प्रयोग अनावश्यक है।
- (7) (c) Knows के बाद it लगाना आवश्यक है।
- (8) (b) 'Laugh' की जगह 'laughs' होगा Laugh, him के लिए प्रयुक्त हुआ है जो Singular Pronoun है।
- (9) (a) 'myself' के बदले 'I' होगा। ध्यान दें, Reflexive pronoun, कभी भी वाक्य में Subject की तरह प्रयुक्त नहीं हो सकता है। साधारण बोलचाल में हम myself को subject की तरह प्रयोग करते हैं। जैसे:
 Myself is Suresh. *Incorrect*
 I am Suresh. *Correct*
 Yourself is responsible. *Incorrect*
 You are responsible. *Correct*
- (10) (d) give के बाद 'it' लगेगा। Give एक transitive verb है, इसके साथ Object लगाना आवश्यक है।

DETERMINERS/ ADJECTIVES

Traditional Grammar में Determiners को Adjective से अलग नहीं किया गया है। Determiners, Adjectives का ही भाग है जिनमें निम्न विशेषताएँ पाई जाती हैं:

- (1) Determiners के रूप में परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। जैसे: A, an, the, some, all, much, both, few, whole, etc. इनमें कोई Suffix या Prefix जोड़कर कोई परिवर्तन नहीं किया जा सकता है। जबकि Adjectives के रूप में परिवर्तन सम्भव है, जैसे: Black से Blackish, Blackness; Good से Goodness, Fast को Faster, Fastest बनाया जा सकता है।
- (2) Determiners का प्रयोग हमेशा Noun से पहले होता है। जबकि Adjectives का प्रयोग Noun के पहले भी हो सकता है एवं बाद में भी। Determiner का प्रयोग होने पर यह निश्चित हो जाता है कि इसके बाद Noun अवश्य आयेगा।
- (3) वाक्य में Determiner एवं Adjective दोनों का प्रयोग हो तो पहले Determiner, फिर Adjective एवं फिर Noun आता है। Adjective का प्रयोग Determiner के पहले नहीं किया जा सकता है। जैसे:
(a) He is a boy. (b) He is a good boy. (c) I have some pencils. (d) I have some coloured pencils.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में a, some; Determiners हैं तथा good एवं coloured, adjectives हैं। वाक्य (a) एवं (c) में Determiners का प्रयोग Noun से पहले हुआ है। (b) एवं (d) वाक्यों में Determiner + Adjective + Noun का प्रयोग हुआ है।

Adjectives

Adjective वह शब्द है जो एक वाक्य में प्रयुक्त Noun या Pronoun को विशेषता प्रदान करता है।

An Adjective is a word, when used with a noun or pronoun adds something to the meaning of noun or pronoun.

Look at the following sentences:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| (a) She is a <u>good</u> girl. | (b) Alwar is a <u>small</u> city. |
| (c) He gave me <u>five</u> pencils. | (d) This is <u>my</u> pen. |

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Underlined words, Adjectives हैं।

Kinds of Adjectives

- | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (1) Proper Adjective | (2) Adjective of Quality | (3) Adjective of Quantity |
| (4) Adjective of Number | (5) Demonstrative Adjective | (6) Interrogative Adjective |
| (7) Emphasising Adjective | (8) Exclamatory Adjective | (9) Possessive Adjective |

- (1) **Proper Adjective** : Proper noun से बनने वाले Adjectives, Proper Adjectives कहलाते हैं। जैसे: Indian, African, American, European etc. India से Indian, Africa से African बने हैं। India एवं Africa Proper Nouns हैं।
- (2) **Adjective of Quality** : ये किसी व्यक्ति, वस्तु या स्थान की quality (विशेषता) बताते हैं जैसे: Honest man, beautiful lady, big city, large building, beautiful palace, black dog, white tiger etc. These are also called defining adjectives.
सभी underlined words, Adjective of Quality हैं जो सम्बन्धित noun की विशेषता बता रहे हैं।
- (3) **Adjective of Quantity** : यह Noun की quantity (परिमाण, मात्रा) को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे: Whole, Some, Enough, Sufficient, No, Full, Entire etc.
- (4) **Adjective of Number** : यह व्यक्तियों, वस्तुओं की संख्या व्यक्त करता है, या यह उनके क्रम (Order) को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे: One, Two....., Many, Few, All, Some, First, Second,..... Last, next etc.
Adjective of Number को तीन भागों में विभाजित किया गया है:
 - (a) **Definite Number Adjectives** : जो exact number or order (निश्चित संख्या या क्रम) की जानकारी देता है जैसे: One, Two, Three ये cardinals कहलाते हैं।
First, Second, Third ये ordinals कहलाते हैं।
 - (b) **Indefinite Number Adjectives** : ये exact number (निश्चित संख्या या क्रम) व्यक्त नहीं करते हैं।
जैसे: Any, All, Few, Some, Several, Many, Certain etc.
 - (c) **Distributive Adjectives** : Either, Each, Every, Neither etc, distributive adjectives हैं जो Distribution को व्यक्त करते हैं।
- (5) **Demonstrative Adjectives** : It points out which person or thing. इस तरह के Adjectives हैं: This, That, These, Such, Those etc. ये विशेषण Particular व्यक्ति या स्थान को व्यक्त करते हैं।
- (6) **Interrogative Adjectives** : What, Whose, Which, Where जैसे शब्द जो प्रश्न करते हुए Adjective का कार्य करते हैं, Interrogative Adjectives कहलाते हैं।
- (7) **Emphasising Adjectives** : Own, Very, Quite जैसे शब्द जो noun को Emphasise (Impress upon) करने हेतु प्रयुक्त होते हैं, Emphasising adjectives कहलाते हैं।
- (8) **Exclamatory Adjectives** : What का प्रयोग वाक्य में exclamation हेतु प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे: What a beautiful girl !, What an idea !
- (9) **Possessive Adjectives** : My, His, Her, Your, Their इत्यादि Possessive Adjectives हैं जो Noun का अधिकार (हक) व्यक्त करते हैं।

Correct Use of Some 'Adjectives'

(1) Each/Every/Either/Neither

Each/Every/Either/Neither के साथ हमेशा Singular Noun का प्रयोग होता है एवं Verb भी Singular ही लगती है। जैसे:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| (a) Each student gets a prize. | (b) Every seat was occupied. |
| (c) Either book is useful. | (d) Neither book is useful. |

यदि वाक्य में Every के बाद कोई plural adjective of number (two, three, four etc) का प्रयोग हो तो उसके बाद आने वाला Noun, plural होगा। जैसे:

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| (a) She takes medicine every three hours. | (b) He visits here every two months. |
|---|--------------------------------------|

(2) Each/Every

- (A) Each एवं Every दोनों का अर्थ समान है। Each का प्रयोग दो से अधिक के लिए भी होता है, जबकि Every का प्रयोग दो से अधिक के लिए ही होता है। जैसे :
- | | |
|---|--|
| (a) Each of the two girls gets a prize. | (b) Each of the ten students gets a prize. |
| (c) Every student gets a prize. | (d) Every candidate was given a certificate. |
- Each Two and more than two.
Every More than two.
- (B) Each का प्रयोग निश्चित संख्या हेतु, तथा Every का प्रयोग अनिश्चित संख्या हेतु किया जाता है। जैसा वाक्य (b), (c) एवं (d) से स्पष्ट है।
- (C) Each का प्रयोग उस समय किया जाता है जब, वस्तु या व्यक्ति को Individuality, या Separate Action व्यक्त करना हो। Every का प्रयोग Group में Action को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- | | |
|---|------------------------------|
| (a) Each student was given a certificate by the Chief Guest one by one. | |
| (b) Each student went to meet the Chairman in line. | |
| (c) Every student has a book. | (d) Every student was happy. |
- (D) Each एक Pronoun भी है एवं एक Adjective भी है। अतः Each के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है। लेकिन Every केवल Adjective है। अतः Every के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग करना गलत होगा। जैसे :
- | | |
|--|-----------|
| Each of the teachers is doing his work. | Correct |
| Every of the teachers is doing his work. | Incorrect |
- (E) Each and every दोनों का इस तरह का प्रयोग दो से अधिक हेतु ही किया जा सकता है, दो के लिए केवल each का ही प्रयोग करना होता है। जैसे :
- Each and every student received a prize.

(3) Either/Both

Either का अर्थ है : दोनों में से एक या दोनों।

Both का अर्थ है : दोनों

Either का अर्थ 'या तो' उस स्थिति में होता है जब एक भाग, दूसरे भाग का ही Complement होता है। जैसे :

Either side of the road, Either hand.

Both का प्रयोग तब किया जाता है, जब वस्तु के इस प्रकार दो भाग नहीं होते हैं।

Look at the following sentences:

- (a) There was water on either side of the highway. (b) His either son went to America.



वाक्य (b) में Either की जगह Both का प्रयोग होगा एवं Son की जगह Plural Noun, Sons का प्रयोग होगा। (Either के साथ singular noun का प्रयोग होता है) His Both sons went to America.

(4) Little/A little/The little

Little का प्रयोग uncountable के साथ किया जाता है। Little का अर्थ नकारात्मक (नगण्य या कुछ नहीं) होता है। A little का अर्थ 'कुछ', 'थोड़ा सा' होता है। जबकि The little का अर्थ 'जो सब कुछ थोड़ा सा' (not much but all that is) होता है।

Use of little—नगण्य या कुछ नहीं :

- | | |
|--|--|
| (a) He takes little interest in parental business. | (He has hardly any or no interest.) |
| (b) We have little hope of his recovery. | (उसके ठीक होने की आशा नगण्य, न के बराबर है।) |
| (c) He has little knowledge of computers. | (उसकी जानकारी न के बराबर है।) |

A little : Not much but some—‘कुछ’, ‘थोड़ा सा’:

- (a) We have a little hope of his recovery. (उसके ठीक होने की कुछ आशा है।)
 (b) A little knowledge is always dangerous. (थोड़ी जानकारी खतरनाक होती है।)
 (c) He takes a little interest in parental business. (वह थोड़ा ध्यान देता है।)

The little : Not much but all there is—‘जो सब कुछ थोड़ा सा’:

- (a) The little money she had, was also spent on medicines.
 (जो कुछ थोड़ा सा धन था, अब कुछ नहीं बचा है।)
 (b) Use the little time you have in a proper way now. (जो कुछ थोड़ा सा समय बचा है।)
 (c) He has wasted the little money he had in gambling.
 (जो कुछ थोड़ा सा धन वह सब, अब कुछ नहीं बचा है।)

(5) Few/A Few/The Few

Few का प्रयोग Countables के लिए किया जाता है। Few का अर्थ नकारात्मक (नगण्य, न के बराबर) होता है। A few का अर्थ, ‘कुछ’ होता है, जबकि The few का अर्थ ‘जो भी थोड़ा सा सब’।

(A) Use of ‘Few’: Means ‘Hardly any’—नगण्य, न के बराबर

- (a) Few people are fully happy. (नगण्य व्यक्ति)
 (b) Few men are free from any disease. (न के बराबर या कोई नहीं)
 (c) Few women can avoid talking. (न के बराबर)
 (d) Few women can keep secrets. (न के बराबर, कोई नहीं)

(B) Use of ‘A few’ — means ‘थोड़े से’ (not many)

- (a) A few person can write correct English. (कुछ व्यक्ति)
 (b) He asked me a few questions. (कुछ प्रश्न)
 (c) He died only a few months ago. (कुछ माह पूर्व)
 (d) A few students secured more than 80% marks in Physics.

(C) Use of ‘The Few’ — means ‘not many but all there are’—‘जो भी थोड़ा सा सब’:

- (a) The few utensils she had, were taken by the thief. (थोड़े से सारे अब और बर्तन नहीं बचे हैं।)
 (b) The few clothes he had, all burnt in fire. (थोड़े से कपड़े, सारे, अब और कपड़े नहीं।)
 (c) The few members of the committee all took part in the demonstration. (सभी सदस्य थोड़े से)
 (d) The few books he had, were taken by the thief. (थोड़ी सी सारी किताबें)



Few का अर्थ Negative (नगण्य) में होता है एवं A few तथा The few का अर्थ Positive में होता है। इनका सही प्रयोग करना महत्वपूर्ण है।

(6) Fewer/Less/Lesser

- (A) Fewer का प्रयोग countables में ‘कम संख्या’ हेतु किया जाता है।
 (B) Less का प्रयोग Uncountables हेतु ‘थोड़ी मात्रा’ हेतु किया जाता है। Price एवं number के साथ less का प्रयोग नहीं करना चाहिए।
 (C) Lesser का अर्थ होता है कम महत्वपूर्ण। जैसे :
 (a) Fewer persons were present in the meeting.
 (b) No fewer than ten persons were killed in the accident.

- (c) I have less time for my preparations.
- (d) He has less money to buy a T.V.
- (e) Many lesser speakers also came to speak.
- (f) Many lesser leaders were present in the function.
- (g) She had fewer chores, but she also had less energy.
- (h) We spent less than forty dollars on our trip.

Generally, when we're talking about countable things, we use the word fewer; when we're talking about measurable quantities that we cannot count, we use the word less.

(7) Later/Latest/Latter/Last

Later एवं Latest का प्रयोग सामान्य रूप से समय के सन्दर्भ में किया जाता है। Latter एवं Last का प्रयोग स्थिति (क्रम) के सन्दर्भ में किया जाता है। जब दो के लिए स्थिति/क्रम के सन्दर्भ में प्रयोग किया जाना हो तो Latter का, एवं दो से अधिक के सन्दर्भ में Last का प्रयोग (बाद वाले को बताने के लिए) किया जाता है। Latest का अर्थ होता है: Last up to now only, अर्थात् अब तक जो अन्तिम है जबकि Last का अर्थ होता है अन्तिम, उसके बाद कोई नहीं (Finally last).

Look at the following sentences:

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| (a) I will come later. | (बाद में) |
| (b) He came later than I. | (मेरे बाद, समय के अनुसार) |
| (c) Between Ram and Shyam, the latter is more intelligent. | (क्रम के बाद में अर्थात् Shyam) |
| (d) Of iron and silver, the latter is known as white metal. | (क्रम में बाद वाला अर्थात् Silver) |
| (e) This is the latest fashion. | (अब तक का सबसे अन्तिम, नया) |
| (f) This is the latest technology. | (अब तक की सबसे अन्तिम, नई) |
| (g) At last the chairman distributed the prizes. | (अन्त में, उसके बाद कुछ नहीं हुआ) |
| (h) Lord Mountbatten was the last Governor General of India. | (अन्तिम, उसके बाद कोई नहीं) |

(8) Elder/Eldest/Older/Oldest

Elder एवं Eldest का प्रयोग एक ही परिवार के सदस्यों हेतु किया जाता है। Older/Oldest का प्रयोग व्यक्तियों एवं वस्तुओं दोनों के लिए किया जा सकता है। Elder के साथ हमेशा 'to' Preposition प्रयुक्त होता है, जबकि Older के साथ 'than' Preposition प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे :

- | | |
|---|---|
| (a) Ram is my elder brother. | (b) Ram is older than Shyam. |
| (c) This is the oldest college in our city. | (d) The older people should be respected. |
| (e) My mother is the eldest member of our family. | |
| (f) Sunder and Purinder are real brothers. Sunder is elder to Purinder. | |

(9) Farther/Further/Farthest

Farther का अर्थ होता है तुलनात्मक रूप से अधिक दूर (Far—Farther—Farthest) यह Far की Comparative degree है तथा Farthest, Far की Superlative degree है, जिसका अर्थ है सबसे अधिक दूर। Further का अर्थ होता है Additional (अतिरिक्त) Farther एवं Farthest का प्रयोग दूरी के सन्दर्भ में तथा Further का प्रयोग Action या सूचना आदि के सन्दर्भ में सामान्यतया किया जाता है। जैसे:

- (a) Mumbai is farther from Alwar than from Jaipur.
- (b) No further action is required.
- (c) Please don't make further delay.
- (d) It is the farthest place from the railway station.

(10) Some/Any

Some का प्रयोग सामान्यतया Affirmative वाक्यों में Countables एवं Uncountables दोनों के साथ किया जा सकता है। Interrogative Aentence में Some का प्रयोग Request या Commands के रूप में किया जाता है। Some के साथ Request का अर्थ सामान्य रूप से मान ली जाने वाली Request के लिए होता है। जैसे :

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------|
| (a) I shall buy some books. | Countables |
| (b) They have purchased some fruit. | Uncountables |
| (c) Will you give me some milk? | Request |
| (d) Can you lend me some rupees? | Request |

Any का प्रयोग सामान्यतया Negative एवं Interrogative वाक्यों में Countables एवं Uncountables दोनों के लिए किया जा सकता है। जैसे :

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| (a) I don't have any pen. | (b) Have you any novel? |
| (c) He hasn't purchased any fruits. | (d) Did anyone come here? |
| (e) They do not have any chair. | (f) I haven't watched any serial today. |

(11) No any

'No any' कोई phrase नहीं है। अतः इसका प्रयोग गलत है। जैसे :

निम्न में वाक्य (a) अशुद्ध है :

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| (a) I have no any book. | (b) I have no any pencil. |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|

चूँकि No एवं any दोनों adjective हैं। अतः दोनों एक noun का गुण नहीं बता सकते। अतः दोनों का एक साथ प्रयोग गलत है।

(12) Near/Next

Near का प्रयोग दूरी के सन्दर्भ में किया जाता है। जबकि Next का प्रयोग क्रम (Order) के सन्दर्भ में किया जाता है। जैसे :

- | | |
|--|---|
| (a) Ram lives near to my school. | (b) My house is near to the station. |
| (c) She is sitting next to her father. | (d) I will meet you at the next crossing. |

(13) Much/Many

Much—परिमाण (quantity) के लिए प्रयुक्त होता है।

Many—संख्या (Number) को व्यक्त करता है।

Much एवं many का प्रयोग सामान्यतया Negative एवं Interrogative वाक्यों में किया जाता है। जैसे :

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| (a) I haven't much patience. | (b) She hasn't much money. |
| (c) Have you much money? | (d) I haven't many chairs. |
| (e) He hasn't many cars. | (f) Have you many friends? |

(1) Affirmative वाक्यों में Much/Many का प्रयोग Subject के साथ हो सकता है लेकिन Object के साथ नहीं होता है। जैसे :

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| (a) Many people came to see the temple. | (b) Much milk was required. |
|---|-----------------------------|

यहाँ people एवं milk, Subjects हैं, अतः इनके साथ Many/Much का प्रयोग उचित है। लेकिन यदि इनका प्रयोग Object की तरह निम्न प्रकार किया जाये तो गलत होगा। जैसे :

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| (a) I know many persons. | (b) I learned many poems. |
| (c) He bought much sugar. | (d) She put much water. |

यहाँ Many/Much का प्रयोग एक Object की तरह Affirmative Sentences में किया गया है जो गलत है।

Affirmative Sentences में ध्यान रखें :

(2) Affirmative Sentences में Object की तरह much/many की अपेक्षा निम्न phrases का प्रयोग करना चाहिए :
a lot of, lots of, a plenty of a large quantity of, a large number of etc.

(3) *Much/Many* के साथ *as, how, too* का प्रयोग करने पर, इनका (*Much/Many*) प्रयोग *Subject* एवं *Object* के साथ भी किया जा सकता है। जैसे:

- (a) *She has too many friends.*
 (b) *I don't have too much milk.*
 (c) *I don't remember how many persons came here.*
 (d) *You can purchase as many books as you like.*
 (e) *You can take as much water as you need.*
 (f) *I don't know how much sugar is needed.*



(14) Whole/All

(A) Whole का प्रयोग जब एक Adjective की तरह किया जाता है, तो इससे पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करना चाहिए। जैसे:

- (a) He wasted the whole day. (b) I worked the whole day.

(B) Whole का प्रयोग जब Proper Noun के पहले किया जाता है, तो इससे पहले 'the' तथा बाद में of का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे:

- (a) The whole of India mourned the death of Rajeev Gandhi.
 (b) The whole of Rajas than was in the grip of drought.

(C) All का प्रयोग जब Plural Noun के साथ किया जाता है, तो All के बाद 'The' का प्रयोग करना होता है। Possessive Noun या Pronoun के साथ All हमेशा उससे पहले लगता है। जैसे:

- (a) All the students were happy. (b) All the girls were present.
 (c) All my friends went to party. (d) He spent all his money.

(15) Both

(A) Both का प्रयोग जब वाक्य में एक Adjective की तरह किया जाता है, तो इसके बाद 'the' का प्रयोग किया जाता है।



'The' का प्रयोग कभी भी Both के पहले नहीं होता है। जैसे:

- (a) I know both the women. (b) She knows both the boys.

(B) Personal Pronouns के साथ Both of का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) Both of them can come tomorrow. (b) She invited both of us.

(C) Both का प्रयोग Pronouns के बाद Object की तरह भी किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) She invited us both. (b) She sends you both her love.

(D) Bothnot के प्रयोग की जगह Neither of them का प्रयोग करना चाहिए। जैसे :

- (a) Both of them are not here. *Incorrect*
 (b) Neither of them is here. *Correct*

(16) As as/So as

As.....as का प्रयोग तुलनात्मक वाक्यों में Similarity/Likeliness व्यक्त करने हेतु किया जाता है।

So.....as का प्रयोग ऐसे वाक्यों में Unlikeliness, dissimilarity, (negative वाक्यों) व्यक्त करने हेतु किया जाता है। जैसे:

- (a) He is as intelligent as his sister. (b) This shirt is as good as mine.
 (c) He is not so intelligent as his sister. (d) This shirt is not so good as mine.

(17) Another/Other/Any other

Another का प्रयोग Singular Noun के साथ, तथा Other का प्रयोग Plural Noun के साथ किया जाता है। Any other का प्रयोग सामान्यतया Negative वाक्यों में Singular एवं Plural दोनों तरह के Nouns के साथ हो सकता है। जैसे :

- (a) He has purchased another book. (b) She has visited other places.
(c) I haven't seen any other place. (d) They haven't visited any other places.

(18) First/Foremost

First का प्रयोग क्रम में, 'प्रथम' के लिए होता है; जबकि Foremost का अर्थ 'महत्वपूर्ण' होता है। जैसे :

- (a) Ram was the first to arrive here.
(b) Indira Gandhi was the foremost politician of her time.

(19) Verbal/Oral

Verbal एवं Oral को समान अर्थ में आजकल प्रयुक्त किया जाने लगा है। Oral का अर्थ होता है 'जबानी'। जबकि Verbal का अर्थ होता है शाब्दिक। A verbal picture, an oral message.

- (a) There is verbal similarity in these two essays. (b) He informed me orally about his absence.

(20) Due to/Owing to

- (a) Due to का अर्थ 'result of' (कारण से) जबकि Owing to का अर्थ 'Because of' (इस कारण) Due to का में 'to' का प्रयोग एक Preposition की तरह हुआ है।

- (b) Due to का प्रयोग Subject + Verb के बाद किया जाता है। 'Owing to' का सामान्यतया प्रयोग वाक्य के शुरू में होता है।

Look at the following sentences:

- (a) He failed due to his negligency. (b) Owing to his negligency he failed.
(c) The accident was due to carelessness. (d) Owing to carelessness, there was an accident.

(21) Good versus Well

In both casual speech and formal writing, we frequently have to choose between the adjective good and the adverb well. With most verbs, there is no contest : when modifying a verb, use the adverb.

- (a) He swims well.
(b) He knows only too well who the murderer is.
However, when using a linking verb or a verb that has to do with the five human senses, you want to use the adjective instead.
(c) How are you? I'm feeling good, thank you.
(d) After a bath, the baby smells so good.
(e) Even after my careful paint job, this room doesn't look good.

Many writers, however, will use well after linking verbs relating to health, and this is all right. In fact, to say that you are good or that you feel good implies not only that you're ok physically but also that your spirits are high.

How are you?

I am well, thank you.

(22) Bad versus Badly

When your puppy died (assuming you loved your puppy), did you feel bad or badly? Applying the same rule that applies to good versus well, use the adjective form after verbs that have to do with human feelings. You felt bad. If you said you felt badly, it would mean that something was wrong with your faculties for feeling.

Rules : Adjectives

Rule 1

जब किसी वस्तु का Comparison किया जाता है तो Compare करते समय उस वस्तु को Exclude करना चाहिए। जैसे :

- (a) Iron is harder than any metal.

इस वाक्य का अर्थ है कि Iron किसी भी metal से अधिक hard है। किसी भी metal में Iron भी सम्मिलित है। अतः इस वाक्य को निम्न प्रकार लिखा जाना चाहिए :

Iron is harder than any other metal.

- (b) This building is larger than any building in the town.

Incorrect

This building is larger than any other building in the town.

Correct

- (c) He is more intelligent than any student of his class.

Incorrect

He is more intelligent than any other student of his class.

Correct

- (d) Ram is stronger than all students.

Incorrect

Ram is stronger than any other student.

Correct

Rule 2

एक वाक्य में दो Comparative Adjectives का एक साथ प्रयोग करना गलत है। जैसे :

- (a) He is more wiser than you.

Incorrect

He is wiser than you.

Correct

- (b) I am comparatively better today.

Incorrect

I am better today.

Correct

I am comparatively well today.

Correct

- (c) I didn't find more costlier gift.

Incorrect

I didn't find more costly gift.

Correct

यदि एक Adjective Comparative Degree में है तो उसके साथ Positive Degree का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

'Comparatively' शब्द के साथ भी Comparative Degree के Adjective का प्रयोग नहीं करना चाहिए।



Comparative से पहले Rather का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है:

She is rather better today.

लेकिन ऐसे वाक्यों में fairly का प्रयोग नहीं करना चाहिए।

She is fairly better today. यह गलत है।

Rule 3

कुछ Adjectives जैसे: Senior, Junior, Posterior, Superior, Inferior, Anterior, इत्यादि के साथ Preposition 'to' का प्रयोग किया जाता है। इनके साथ More या Less का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। ये सभी Adjectives, Latin भाषा से ग्रहण किए गए हैं। Elder, prefer एवं preferable के साथ भी 'to' का ही प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :

- (a) He is superior to me.

- (b) She is junior to me.

- (c) Ram is senior to Shyam.

- (d) He came prior to me.



Major, Minor, Exterior, Interior, Outer, Lower, Ulterior, Upper, Former, Inner इत्यादि शब्द दिखने में Comparative Degree Adjectives लगते हैं। ये Comparative degree नहीं हैं। इनका प्रयोग Comparison हेतु नहीं किया जा सकता।

Rule 4

जब एक ही व्यक्ति या वस्तु की दो Qualities की तुलना की जाती है तो 'er' से बने Comparative Adjective का प्रयोग नहीं करना चाहिए बल्कि More का प्रयोग करना चाहिए। जैसे :

- (a) Ram is more strong than intelligent. (यहाँ stronger का प्रयोग गलत होगा)
 (b) She is more clever than intelligent. (यहाँ cleverer का प्रयोग गलत होगा)

Rule 5

Superlative Adjective से पूर्व 'the' का प्रयोग होता है। लेकिन Superlative Adjective से पूर्व कोई Possessive pronoun का प्रयोग हुआ हो तो इससे पहले 'the' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे :

- (a) She is the best student in our college. (b) She is the most beautiful girl in our college.
 (c) She is my best friend. (d) This is his best dress.

Rule 6

जब दो वस्तुओं का Comparison किया जाता है तो वाक्य से उन वस्तुओं का ही Comparison स्पष्ट होना चाहिए। कई बार Comparison करते समय निम्न प्रकार की गलती की जाती है :

- (a) The climate of Alwar is hotter than Jaipur. *Incorrect*
 The climate of Alwar is hotter than that of Jaipur. *Correct*
 (b) My shoes are better than you. *Incorrect*
 My shoes are better than yours or your shoes. *Correct*

Rule 7

Comparative Degree का प्रयोग, दो वस्तुओं या व्यक्तियों हेतु किया जाता है। दो से अधिक के लिए Comparative Degree का प्रयोग नहीं करना चाहिए। जैसे :

- (a) Which is better ; Tea, coffee or milk? *Incorrect*
 (b) Which is easier, Physics, Chemistry or Maths? *Incorrect*

Rule 8

दो वस्तुओं की तुलना हेतु Superlative Degree का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) He is the best of the two students. (b) Which is the cheapest ; silver or gold?

Rule 9

वाक्य में दो Superlative का प्रयोग एक साथ किया जाना गलत है। जैसे :

- (a) He is the most strongest of all. *Incorrect*
 He is the strongest of all. *Correct*
 (b) The river is the most longest of all. *Incorrect*
 The river is the longest of all. *Correct*

Rule 10

Superlative के साथ other or else का प्रयोग करना भी गलत है। जैसे :

- (a) She is the most beautiful of all girls. (not all other girls)
 (b) He is the strongest of all students. (not all other students)

Rule 11

Superlative के साथ सामान्यतया 'of' का प्रयोग किया जाता है, लेकिन जब स्थान (place) कर सन्दर्भ हो तो 'in' का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) Kolkata is the dirtiest city in India.
- (b) Udaipur is the most beautiful city in Rajasthan.

Rule 12

कई वाक्यों में 'a most' का प्रयोग Very के अर्थ में किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) This is a most interesting book. (in the library)
- (b) She is a most beautiful girl. (in the school)

ऐसे वाक्यों में Superlative की तरह in the library, or in the school का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।

Rule 13

Superlative Degree, Best एवं Most के साथ कई बार Like का प्रयोग निम्न तरह से किया जाता है। यह सही प्रयोग है, इसमें Superlative से पहले 'the' का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) Which of the story do you like most?
- (b) Which of the magazine do you like best?

Rule 14

जब एक से अधिक Adjectives को and से जोड़ा जाता है तो सभी Adjectives एक ही Degree में होने चाहिए। या तो सब Comparative में हों या सब Superlative में होने चाहिए। जैसे :

- (a) Ram is wiser and stronger than Shyam. Correct
- (b) Ram is wise and stronger than Shyam. Incorrect

Rule 15

कई Adjectives अपने Meaning के कारण न तो comparative की तरह प्रयोग किये जा सकते हैं न ही Superlative की अन्य Degree के साथ। इनके साथ Very या अन्य कोई Adverb, इनको Emphasise करने के लिए प्रयुक्त नहीं किया जा सकता है। ऐसे Adjectives निम्न हैं :

Absolute, Perfect, Full, Complete, Entire, Whole, Chief, Extreme, Unique, Universal, Circular, Square, Round, Ideal, Flat, Impossible etc.

यद्यपि आजकल कुछ लेखक Full, Fuller, Fullest एवं Perfect, More Perfect एवं Most Perfect तथा Most Impossible एवं Most Universal का प्रयोग करने लगे हैं। शेष Adjective का इस तरह प्रयोग नहीं किया गया है।

Rule 16

Kind एवं Sort, Singular Number होते हैं। इनके साथ This या That का प्रयोग होता है। इनके साथ These या Those का प्रयोग करना गलत है। जैसे:

- (a) I don't like this kind of dresses. (b) He doesn't like that kind of shirts.
- (c) I don't like these kinds of shirts. Incorrect
- (d) I don't like those kind of shirts. Incorrect

Rule 17

One ofIf not Superlative कुछ वाक्यों का Structure इस तरह का होता है। जैसे :

- (a) He is one of the greatest writers, if not the greatest writer.
- (b) This is one of the largest buildings, if not the largest in the world.
- (c) This is one of the longest rivers, if not the longest in the world.



इस तरह के वाक्यों में *one of the superlative* के बाद *plural noun* प्रयुक्त होती है तथा *if not the superlative* के बाद *singular noun* प्रयुक्त होती है। साधारणतया ऐसे वाक्यों में *if not the superlative* के बाद *noun* को नहीं लिखा जाता है।

Rule 18

One of the superlative among :

निम्न वाक्यों पर ध्यान दें :

- (a) He is one of the best students in our school. (b) He is one of the best sportsmen of all.

यहाँ One of the + superlative के बाद आने वाला Noun Plural में होगा। यह एक महत्वपूर्ण तथ्य है।

Rule 19

कुछ वाक्य ऐसे होते हैं जिनमें *Adjective* की *Comparative Degree* का प्रयोग दोनों भागों में निम्न प्रकार से होता है:

- (a) The more she gets, the more she demands.
 (b) The richer a man is, the larger house he owns.
 (c) The more I try to please her the more angry she becomes.

इस प्रकार के वाक्यों में दोनों **Comparative Degrees** से पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होता है।

Rule 20

कुछ वाक्यों का structure इस तरह का होता हैComparative + and + comparative.

- (a) He is getting richer and richer.
 (b) The weather is getting cooler and cooler.

ऐसे वाक्यों में comparative से पूर्व 'the' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

Rule 21

कुछ वाक्यों का structure निम्न प्रकार का होता है:

- (a) She runs as fast as, if not faster than Shyam.
 (b) He is as good as if not better than you.
 (c) The house is as large as if not larger than that.



ऐसे वाक्यों में *as.....as* (दोनों बार *as*) का प्रयोग होता है तथा दूसरे भाग में *Comparative degree* का प्रयोग होता है।

Rule 22

Comparative को ओर महत्व (Emphatic) देने हेतु *Much / Far / By For / Far And Away / Still* का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है

- (a) Ram is much wiser than Shyam. (b) This magazine is far better than that.
 (c) The book is better by far. (d) This magazine is still better.



All the का प्रयोग करने से भी *Comparative* को *Emphatic* महत्वपूर्ण बनाया जाता है।

(a) It is all the better.

(b) That was all the more interesting.

Position of Adjectives

- (1) सामान्यतया Adjective का प्रयोग उस Noun के पहले किया जाता है जिसे वह विशेषता प्रदान करता है। जैसे :
 (a) He is a good boy. (b) She is a beautiful girl.
- (2) जब कई Adjectives एक Noun के साथ प्रयुक्त होते हैं, तो इन Adjectives को Noun के बाद लगाया जाता है। जैसे :
 (a) The soldier, fearless and determined attacked the enemy quickly.
 (b) A girl, intelligent and beautiful won the race.
- (3) यदि वाक्य में Indefinite Pronoun का प्रयोग हो तो Adjective का सामान्यतया प्रयोग इसके बाद करते हैं जैसे :
 (a) It is something important. (b) Is there anything interesting?
 (c) I have nothing new to say. (d) He is someone powerful.
- (4) कई बार निम्न स्थिति में Adjective का प्रयोग (मुख्यतया पदवी हेतु) Noun के बाद किया जाता है। जैसे :
 Akbar the great, Louis the III, Alexander the great.
- (5) कुछ निम्न Phrases में Adjective, Noun के बाद आता है। जैसे :
 Notary public, Time immemorial, Body politic, God Almighty, Heir Apparent, Sum total, God Incarnate, Governor-General, etc.
 कुछ Adjectives जैसे: Asleep, Alone, Ashamed, Alike का प्रयोग वाक्य में Predicatively होता है जैसे :
 (a) The child is asleep. (b) The baby is awake.
 (c) I am alone. (d) They look alike.
- (6) जब Adjective के साथ कोई Phrase या Words उसे स्पष्ट करने हेतु प्रयुक्त होते हैं तो Adjective को Noun के बाद लगाते हैं। जैसे :
 (a) A man, wiser than his fellows solved the question within a minute.
 (b) She is a girl, benevolent in nature.
- (7) Poetry में Adjective का प्रयोग कई बार Noun के बाद किया जाता है। जैसे :
 'O man with friends dear! Children dear was if yesterday.

Also Remember The Following Tips For Placing Adjectives Correctly :

- (1) Adjectives (only, even, almost, nearly, just) should be placed in front of the words they modify.
 You will only need to plant one package of seeds. *Incorrect*
 You will need to plant only one package of seeds. *Correct*
 ("Only" modifies "one," not "need.")
- (2) Place modifying phrases and clauses so that readers can see at a glance what they modify.
 The robber was described as a tall man with a black moustache weighing 150 pounds. *Incorrect*
 The robber was described as a six-feet-tall man weighing 150 pounds with a black moustache. ("150 pounds" describes the man, not the moustache.) *Correct*
- (3) Sentences should flow from subject to verb to object without lengthy detours along the way. When adverbs separate subject from verb, verb from object or helping-verb from main-verb, the result can be awkward.
 John, after trying to reach the ball, decided to get a ladder. *Incorrect*
 After trying to reach the ball, John decided to get a ladder. *Correct*
 (Subject and Verb are no longer separated.)

- (4) Adjectives indicating colour-Adjectives indicating colour usually precede adjectives indicating materials, proper adjectives, and defining adjectives, but follow other types of attributive adjective. In the following examples, the adjectives indicating colour are underlined.

e.g. 'threatening black clouds' ; 'her new red leather jacket'; 'a square brown mahogany table.'

- (5) Adjectives indicating materials-Attributive adjectives indicating the materials from which objects are made usually follow any adjectives indicating colour and precede any proper or defining adjectives. In the following examples, adjectives indicating materials are underlined.

e.g. 'a beautiful blue silk saree' ; 'five red iron coat hangers'; 'the clean marble floor',

- (6) The position of proper adjectives- Proper adjectives usually follow all other types of attributive adjective except defining adjectives.

Proper adjectives are usually derived from proper nouns referring to places or persons. In the following examples, the proper adjectives are underlined.e.g. 'sparkling British wine' ; 'three black brick Georgian manor houses'.

In the first example, the proper adjective British is derived from the place name Britain, and indicates the place of origin of the wine. In the second example, the proper adjective Georgian is derived from George, the name of an English king, and indicates that the houses are built in a style developed during the reign of that king.

It should be noted that proper adjectives may sometimes precede adjectives indicating materials, as in the following examples. This occurs when the adjective indicating a material is used as a type of defining adjective, to help identify what type of object is being described.

e.g. 'African straw hats' ; 'An Indian pearl necklace.'



The-ed ending adjectives are often accompanied by prepositions.

Read the following examples:

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) We were tired of all the lights after a while. | (2) We were annoyed by the elephants. |
| (3) We were bored by the ringmaster. | (4) We were confused by the noise. |
| (5) We were disappointed by the motorcycle daredevils. | |
| (6) We were disappointed in their performance. | |
| (7) We were embarrassed by my brother. | (8) We were exhausted from all the excitement. |
| (9) We were excited by the lion-tamer. | (10) We were excited about the high-wire act, too. |
| (11) We were frightened by the lions. | (12) We were introduced to the ringmaster. |
| (13) We were interested in the tent. | (14) We were irritated by the heat. |
| (15) We were opposed to leaving early. | (16) We were satisfied with the circus. |
| (17) We were shocked at the level of noise under the big tent. | |
| (18) We were surprised by the fan's response. | |
| (19) We were surprised at their indifference. | |
| (20) We were worried about the traffic leaving the parking lot. | |

Formation of Adjectives

- (1) कुछ Adjectives, Noun में कुछ शब्द जोड़ने से बनते हैं। जैसे :

Noun	Adjective	Noun	Adjective
Sick	Sicken	Glory	Glorious
Gold	Golden	Boy	Boyish
Fool	Foolish	Laugh	Laughable
Play	Playful	Courage	Courageous
Care	Careful	Envy	Envious
Trouble	Troublesome	Man	Manly
Shame	Shameless	King	Kingly
Sense	Senseless	Woman	Womanish

- (2) कुछ Adjectives, verb में कुछ शब्द जोड़ने से बनते हैं। जैसे :

Verb	Adjective	Verb	Adjective
Tire	Tiring	Move	Movable
Talk	Talkative	Eat	Edible

- (3) कुछ Adjectives, अन्य Adjectives में ही कुछ शब्द जोड़ने से बनाये हैं। जैसे :

Adjective	Adjective	Adjective	Adjective
Colour	Colourful	Black	Blackish
Green	Greenish	Whole	Wholesome
Yellow	Yellowish	Three	Threesome

Formation of Comparative and Superlative Adjective

- (1) कुछ Comparative/Superlative Adjective, Verb की Positive Form (I form) के साथ er एवं est लगाने से बनते हैं। जैसे :

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Sweet	Sweeter	Sweetest
Young	Younger	Youngest
High	Higher	Highest
Old	Older	Oldest

- (2) जब Positive के अन्त में e आता हो तो Comparative बनाने के लिए केवल r तथा Superlative बनाने के लिए केवल st ही जोड़ना होता है। जैसे :

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
White	Whiter	Whitest
Noble	Nobler	Noblest
Wise	Wiser	Wisest
Large	Larger	Largest
Safe	Safer	Safest
Fine	Finer	Finest

- (3) जब Positive के अन्त में Y आता है एवं उससे पूर्व एक व्यंजन आता है तो y का परिवर्तन i में हो जाता है तथा er तथा est लगाने से Comparative एवं Superlative Adjective बनते हैं जैसे :

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Easy	Easier	Easiest
Lovely	Lovelier	Loveliest
Happy	Happier	Happiest
Heavy	Heavier	Heaviest
Healthy	Healthier	Healthiest
Pretty	Prettier	Prettiest
Merry	Merrier	Merriest

- (4) जब Positive के अन्त में कोई Single Consonant आता हो, उससे पहले Vowel आता हो तो Comparative एवं Superlative बनाते समय यह Consonant दो बार आता है (Double हो जाता है)। जैसे :

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Wet	Wetter	Wettest
Big	Bigger	Biggest
Hot	Hotter	Hottest
Fat	Fatter	Fattest

- (5) कुछ Cases में Comparative एवं Superlative Adjective बनाने के लिए Adverb, More एवं Most का प्रयोग करते हैं। जैसे :

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Difficult	More Difficult	Most Difficult
Important	More Important	Most Important
Careless	More Careless	Most Careless
Beautiful	More Beautiful	Most Beautiful
Courageous	More Courageous	Most Courageous
Useful	More Useful	Most Useful

- (6) कुछ Adjective अपने positive form से बिल्कुल अलग बनते हैं, इसके लिए कोई नियम नहीं है । जैसे :

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Ill, Bad	Worse	Worst
Much	More	Most
Fore	Former	Foremost, First
Late	Later	Latest
Good, Well	Better	Best



TEST YOURSELF Exercises

01.

Fill in the blanks with suitable determiners :

[RAS 1996]

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) Small cars are more economical than big..... | (2) I bought mangoes. |
| (3) Have you sugar ? | (4) knowledge of English is essential for all of us. |
| (5) Clean floor properly. | (6) room is airy. |

02.

Fill in the blanks with suitable determiners :

[RAS 1997]

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) Will you have cake ? | (2) There isn't sugar in the bowl. |
| (3) I'll have a cigarette; will you have too ? | |

03.

Fill in the blanks with suitable determiners :

[RAS 1998]

- (1) Uneasy lies head that wears crown.
- (2) women of India are as beautiful as of Europe.
- (3) He got admission in University in USA.
- (4) He started learning piano at age of ten.

04.

Fill in the blanks with appropriate determiners :

- | | |
|--|-------------------|
| (1) people have car. | (A few/ A little) |
| (2) Give me time to decided the matter. | (a few/ a little) |
| (3) He drank the water. | (all/whole) |
| (4) Delhi is from Alwar than Jaipur. | (further/farther) |
| (5) He is senior me . | (than/to) |
| (6) There are children outside the room. | (some/any) |
| (7) Have you question? | (some/any) |
| (8) Please give me water. | (some/any) |
| (9) Has he bought dress? | (some/any) |
| (10) He can't find banana tree? | (some/any) |
| (11) She has flowers of rose. | (some/any) |
| (12) I could not get note book there. | (some/any) |
| (13) Nisha did not eat mango. | (some/any) |
| (14) Will you please lend me money? | (some/any) |
| (15) She must give me time to finish this work. | (some/any) |
| (16) Is there money in your pocket? | (some/any) |
| (17) dreams are very romantic. | (Some/Any) |
| (18) Sorry, I am stranger here, I have knowledge about this place. | (few/little) |
| (19) She has clothes. | (some/any) |
| (20) He has not car. | (some/any) |

05.*Fill in the blanks with few/a few/the few :*

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) It is a work of month. | (2) He will come back in days. |
| (3) I have read all novels, I had. | (4) people can speak English correctly. |
| (5) I have invited all friends, I have. | (6) day's rest is necessary for the patient. |

06.*Fill in the blanks with little/a little/the little :*

- (1) I have influence in the political field now.
- (2) There is hope of his recovery, he is very serious.
- (3) She had donated property, she had.
- (4) He slept and felt better.
- (5) knowledge is a dangerous thing.
- (6) Please wait I am just coming.
- (7) I have no milk left with me. I have already given to cat milk, I had.

07.*Fill in the blanks with near/next :*

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) Mr. Sharma lives to Ram's house. | (2) Radhika will speak to Sarla. |
| (3) The railway station is to my school. | (4) I will meet you at the crossing. |
| (5) This matter will be discussed again in the meeting. | |

08.*Fill in the blanks with much/many :*

- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) How students are there in the hostel? | (2) people comes to see this temple daily. |
| (3) He doesn't have money to donate. | (4) I love you very |
| (5) There are balls in the store room. | (6) I am obliged to you for your timely help. |
| (7) girls were absent yesterday. | |

09.*Fill in the blanks with suitable determiners :*

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) I haven't time. | (2) There are not boys in the class. |
| (3) There is food left, so you will not go hungry. | |
| (4) good comes of impoliteness. | (5) We must find an excuse; excuse will do. |
| (6) Can I have coffee? | |
| (7) Don't eat more of ice-cream. Leave of it for your brother. | |
| (8) Neither man could come men were ill. | (9) trains are slow, others are fast. |
| (10) Has he money to buy a car? | (11) She went to market to buy things. |
| (12) men here are expected to do their duty. | (13) She gave child ice-cream. |
| (14) There was snow last winter. | |
| (15) Few people like cold weather, people like warm weather. | |
| (16) There were shady trees on side of the road. | |
| (17) man should do his best. | |
| (18) These flowers are pink, are yellow ones. | |
| (19) team could score a goal. So it was a drawn match. | |
| (20) children play in the park everyday. | |

10.

Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with elder/eldest/older/oldest :

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) Ram is than me. | (2) My father is the member of our family. |
| (3) My father is than your father. | (4) My brother is to me. |
| (5) This is the building in our village. | (6) How are you ? |
| (7) My brother is an IAS officer. | (8) This building is than that. |
| (9) We should respect to our | (10) The he grew, the more demands he made. |

11.

Fill in the blanks with last/later/latest/latter :

- (1) At the President gave thanks to the audience.
- (2) Ram came than Shyam.
- (3) This is the technology in the field of computer science.
- (4) Between Ram and Shyam, the is more intelligent.
- (5) The half of the century saw many revolutions.
- (6) Ram was promoted as officer at a date.
- (7) The chapter of this book is very interesting.

12.

Correct the following sentences :

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) Whole girls were present in the function. | (2) All the third books are in our course. |
| (3) This is mine bed, which is your ? | (4) None of these two books is useful. |
| (5) A good deal of persons were present at the railway station. | |
| (6) All the sides of the coin are shining. | (7) He alone lives in such a large house. |
| (8) The both girls have arrived. | (9) She is among the four first merit holders. |
| (10) Lord Ram was an incarnate God. | |

13.

Correct the following sentences :

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) Our all members are very co-operative. | (2) His all books have been burnt in fire. |
| (3) I bought tickets three for Delhi. | (4) The Great Ashoka was a brave king. |
| (5) This custom has been observed since immemorial time. | |
| (6) Have you new anything to tell me about the incident? | |
| (7) Ram is as taller as his brother. | (8) Sita is not more beautiful as Rita. |
| (9) Gold is more precious than any metal. | (10) She is not that all reliable. |

14.

Correct the following sentences :

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) To drive is as difficult as fishing. | |
| (2) It is as difficult to swim as driving. | |
| (3) It is not as easy to write as reading. | |
| (4) They had better died than surrender before the enemy. | |
| (5) I had rather read than wasting my time here. | (6) He is junior than me. |
| (7) According to Ram, milk is preferable than tea. | (8) She is more wiser than her brother. |
| (9) My house is better than Ram. | (10) The climate of Udaipur is better than Jaipur. |

15.*Correct the following sentences :*

- (1) There are lesser rooms in this hotel than that . (2) Take this tablet with a few milk.
- (3) Your problem is comparatively easier than that of mine.
- (4) The quality of this detergent powder is comparatively better .
- (5) He runs as faster, if not fast than you. (6) Sita is as beautiful as if not beautiful than her sister.
- (7) The more you hide something, the most you expose yourself.
- (8) This is all the more better. (9) The valley goes deep and deep after this point.
- (10) Ram said, "I am very better now."

16.*Correct the following sentences :*

- (1) The cloth of this suit is very inferior. (2) This is longest river in the world.
- (3) He is the richest of all man in the city.
- (4) He is the strongest of all other students in the college.
- (5) Ramesh is one of the best student in the college. (6) He is my the best friend.
- (7) Ramesh is one of the strongest persons, if not the strongest in the town.
- (8) I shall purchase the bigger of all these houses. (9) Mr. Sharma is the most ideal teacher.
- (10) This is more the best college in the city.

17.*Correct the following sentences :*

- (1) I have the best and a cheaper magazine. (2) This is out and in the best hospital.
- (3) Which of these books do you like the most ? (4) I don't like these kind of apples.
- (5) I don't like these sort of men. (6) The poors should be helped.
- (7) That was a most excellent opportunity to earn good money.
- (8) She reached here the earliest of both girls. (9) This is the much best school.
- (10) She is getting weak and weaker. (11) He is braver than stronger.
- (12) The quality of this shirt is superior than yours. (13) Ram came prior than me .
- (14) The Ghee of Haryana is better than Rajasthan. (15) He is more intelligent than any student of his class.

18.*Read the following sentences to find whether there is any error in any part :*

- (1) Kolkata is further (a)/from Alwar (b)/than Jaipur (c)/the capital of Rajasthan. (d)
- (2) Ramesh is smarter (a)/enough to get (b)/selected for this (c)/post, without any recommendations. (d)
- (3) He said, "Priyanka (a)/is the most unique (b) /singer of (c)/our college. (d)"
- (4) This shirt is (a)/comparatively better (b)/than that (c)/we saw in corner shop yesterday. (d)
- (5) Everyone was surprised to note (a)/that Rahim married a girl (b)/who was more beautiful and more tall (c)/than he. (d)
- (6) A lots of books (a)/on English grammar are (b)/available with me but (c)/this one is the best. (d)
- (7) I told her (a)/that it would be all (b)/the more better (c)/if she herself talked to the groom. (d)
- (8) She does not have (a)/some money to buy (b)/a new refrigerator (c)/so she is worried. (d)
- (9) Now-a-days (a)/the weather (b)/is getting more cold (c)/and colder. (d)
- (10) All the books (a)/were indeed interesting (b)/but that one was (c)/the more interesting. (d)
- (11) There were only two (a)/warriors but each and every (b)/warrior was equal (c)/to six persons. (d)

- (12) Whole the chapter (a)/of this grammar book is full of errors (b)/that shows the (c)/carelessness of the proof reader. (d)
- (13) Can we rely (a)/on this agency (b)/for the last news (c)/of the day. (d)
- (14) Ram is junior than (a)/Shyam and (b)/Ram is older (c)/than Ganesh. (d)
- (15) The militants (a)/entered the palace (b)/from the utmost gate (c)/with guns hidden in their clothes. (d)
- (16) "She can't sing (a)/much than (b)/four songs at (c)/a stretch", he informed. (d)
- (17) It is well know (a)/that Mrs. Indira Gandhi (b)/was the first statesman (c)/of her time. (d)


SOLUTIONS

TEST YOURSELF Exercises
Solution TYE 01

- (1) ones, (2) some, (3) any, (4) A little/Some, (5) the,
(6) The.

Solution TYE 02

- (1) a, (2) any, (3) one.

Solution TYE 03

- (1) the, a, (2) x, those, (3) a, the, (4) the, the.

Solution TYE 04

- (1) A few, (2) a little, (3) all, (4) farther, (5) to,
(6) some, (7) any, (8) some, (9) any, (10) any,
(11) some, (12) any, (13) any, (14) some, (15) some,
(16) any, (17) Some, (18) little, (19) some, (20) any.

Solution TYE 05

- (1) a few, (2) a few, (3) the few, (4) A few, (5) the few,
(6) A few.

Solution TYE 06

- (1) little, (2) little, (3) the little, (4) a little, (5) A little,
(6) a little, (7) the little.

Solution TYE 07

- (1) near, (2) next, (3) near, (4) next, (5) next.

Solution TYE 08

- (1) many, (2) Many, (3) much, (4) much, (5) many,
(6) much, (7) Many.

Solution TYE 09

- (1) much/any, (2) many/any, (3) a little/some, (4) Little/No, (5) any,
(6) some, (7) any, some, (8) both, (9) Some, (10) enough,
(11) a few/many, (12) All, (13) each,some, (14) a lot of/much, (15) most,
(16) either, (17) Every, (18) those, (19) Neither, (20) Lots of /Many.

Solution TYE 10

- | | | | | |
|------------|-------------|------------|-------------|-------------|
| (1) older, | (2) eldest, | (3) older, | (4) elder, | (5) oldest, |
| (6) old, | (7) elder, | (8) older, | (9) elders, | (10) older. |

Solution TYE 11

- | | | | | |
|------------|------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| (1) last, | (2) later, | (3) latest, | (4) latter, | (5) latter, |
| (6) later, | (7) last. | | | |

Solution TYE 12

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) All the girls were present in the function. | (2) All the three books are in our course. |
| (3) This is my bed, which is yours ? | (4) Neither of these two books is useful. |
| (5) A number of persons were present at the railway station. | (6) Both the sides of the coin are shining. |
| (7) He lives alone in such a large house. | (8) Both the girls have arrived. |
| (9) She is among the first four merit holders. | (10) Lord Ram was God incarnate. |

Solution TYE 13

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) All our members are very co-operative. | (2) All his books have been burnt in fire. |
| (3) I bought three tickets for Delhi. | (4) Ashoka the Great was a brave king. |
| (5) This custom has been observed since time immemorial. | |
| (6) Have you anything new to tell me about the incident? | (7) Ram is as tall as his brother. |
| (8) Sita is not as beautiful as Rita. or Sita is not more beautiful than Rita. | |
| (9) Gold is more precious than any other metal. | (10) She is not all that reliable. |

Solution TYE 14

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) Driving is as difficult as fishing. | (2) It is as difficult to swim as drive. |
| (3) It is not as easy to write as read. | |
| (4) They had better die than surrender before the enemy. | |
| (5) I had rather read than waste my time here. | |
| (6) He is junior to me. | (7) According to Ram, milk is preferable to tea. |
| (8) She is wiser than her brother. | (9) My house is better than Ram's. |
| (10) The climate of Udaipur is better than that of Jaipur. | |

Solution TYE 15

- (1) There are fewer rooms in this hotel than that .
- (2) Take this tablet with a little milk.
- (3) Your problem is comparatively easy than that of mine.
- (4) The quality of this detergent powder is comparatively good .
- (5) He runs as fast, if not faster than you.
- (6) Sita is as beautiful as if not more beautiful than her sister.
- (7) The more you hide something, the more you expose yourself.
- (8) This is all the better.
- (9) The valley goes deeper and deeper after this point.
- (10) Ram said, "I am much better now."

Solution TYE 16

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) The cloth of this suit is much inferior. | (2) This is the longest river in the world. |
| (3) He is the richest of all men in the city. | (4) He is the strongest of all students in the college. |
| (5) Ramesh is one of the best students in the college. | (6) He is my best friend. |
| (7) Ramesh is one of the strongest person, if not the strongest in the town. | |
| (8) I shall purchase the biggest of all these houses. | |
| (9) Mr. Sharma is an ideal teacher. | |
| (10) This is much the best college in the city. | |

Solution TYE 17

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) I have the best and the cheapest magazine. | (2) This is out and out the best hospital. |
| (3) Which of these books do you like the most? | (4) I don't like this kind of apples. |
| (5) I don't like this sort of men. | (6) The poor should be helped. |
| (7) That was an excellent opportunity to earn good money. | (8) She reached here the earliest, of all girls. |
| (9) This is the best school. | (10) She is getting weaker and weaker. |
| (11) He is more brave than strong. | (12) The quality of this shirt is superior to yours. |
| (13) Ram came prior to me. | |
| (14) The Ghee of Haryana is better than that of Rajasthan. | |
| (15) He is more intelligent than any other student of his class. | |

Solution TYE 18

- (1) (a) Change further to farther. Farther का अर्थ अधिक दूर तथा further का अर्थ आगे होता है। Farther 'far' की comparative degree है।
- (2) (a) 'Smarter' की जगह 'smart' लिखा जायेगा। ध्यान रखें: enough के पूर्व, positive degree का प्रयोग होता है।
- (3) (b) Unique के पूर्व, the most को delete करें। ध्यान रखें: कुछ adjectives unique, full, whole, square universal etc. अपने अर्थ के कारण superlative degree की तरह प्रयुक्त होते हैं। इनको compare नहीं किया जा सकता है। more unique, more complete या more square लिखना एवं most unique, most complete या most square लिखना गलत है।
- (4) (b) Comparatively के साथ positive degree के Adjective का प्रयोग होता है। अतः या तो comparatively good लिखा जायेगा या केवल better लिखा जायेगा।
- (5) (c) 'more tall' की जगह 'taller' होगा। सामान्यतया one syllable adjective का comparative उसमें 'er' या 'r' जोड़कर बनाया जाता है।
- (6) (a) 'A lots of' की जगह या तो 'lots of' लिखें या 'A lot of' लिखें।
- (7) (c) 'more better' लिखना गलत है। avoid double comparative. 'more' को delete करें।
- (8) (b) 'Some money' की जगह 'any money' लिखा जायेगा। इस तरह के negative वाक्यों में 'some' की जगह 'Any' का प्रयोग होता है।
- (9) (c) 'More cold' की जगह 'colder' लिखा जायेगा। इस तरह के वाक्यों में comparative degree of adjective का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार से होता है। जैसे:
- (a) He is becoming stronger and stronger.
- (b) The weather is getting hotter and hotter.
- (10) (d) 'more' की जगह 'most' का प्रयोग किया जायेगा। जब दो से अधिक वस्तुओं के साथ तुलना हो तो superlative degree of adjective का प्रयोग किया जाता है। दो वस्तुओं हेतु comparative degree का प्रयोग होता है।
- (11) (b) change each and every to 'each'. ध्यान रखें: each का प्रयोग दो हेतु, किन्तु 'each and every' या 'every' का प्रयोग हमेशा दो से अधिक के लिए होता है।
- (12) (a) 'whole the' की जगह 'the whole' लिखा जायेगा। Whole के पूर्व The लगता है।
- (13) (c) 'last' की अपेक्षा 'latest' लिखा जायेगा। समय के सन्दर्भ late की comparative एवं superlative degree later, latest है।
- (14) (a) 'than' की जगह 'to' का प्रयोग होगा। Junior, senior, prior etc. के साथ to का प्रयोग किया जाता है।
- (15) (c) 'utmost' की जगह 'outermost' लिखा जायेगा। out का comparative, outer एवं superlative; outermost होता है। utmost का अर्थ complete (पूर्णतया) होता है। यहाँ utmost का गलत प्रयोग हुआ है।
- (16) (b) much' की जगह 'more' का प्रयोग होगा। much-positive degree का adjective है जिसका comparative more है।
- (17) (c) यहाँ 'first' की जगह 'foremost' का प्रयोग किया जायेगा first का अर्थ प्रथम होता है जबकि foremost का अर्थ most notable (सर्वाधिक चर्चित) होता है। वाक्य के सन्दर्भ के अनुसार foremost का प्रयोग ही उचित है।

ये कार्य के स्थान को व्यक्त करते हैं।

- (3) **Adverb of Frequency or Number** : Frequently, again, often, seldom, once, twice, etc.

यह कार्य कितनी बार हुआ, को व्यक्त करते हैं।

- (4) **Adverb of Manner** : Fast, swiftly, quickly, easily, slowly, loudly, so, bravely etc.

ये कार्य किस प्रकार (in what manner) सम्पन्न हुआ, को व्यक्त करते हैं।

- (5) **Adverb of Degree or Quantity** : fully, very, rather, perfectly, pretty, almost.

ये adverbs, degree, quantity को व्यक्त करते हैं।

- (6) **Adverb of Affirmation and Negation** : certainly, surely, seldom, never, always, definitely etc.

ये सकारात्मकता या नकारात्मकता को व्यक्त करते हैं जो Adverb (certainly, surely, definitely etc.)

सकारात्मकता (affirmation) को व्यक्त करते हैं उन्हें Adverb of affirmation कहते हैं एवं जो नकारात्मकता (never, don't etc.) को व्यक्त करते हैं उन्हें Adverb of Negation कहते हैं।

- (7) **Adverb of Reasons** : therefore, hence, on account of etc.

ये कार्य के कारण को व्यक्त करते हैं।

- (8) **Adverb of Contrast** : However, though etc.

ये वाक्य में विरोधाभास (contrast) को व्यक्त करते हैं।

- (9) **Adverb of Condition** : Had, if etc. ये वाक्य में शर्त की उपस्थिति को व्यक्त करते हैं।

- (10) **Adverb of Extent** : So far, till now etc. ये वाक्य में कार्य की हद (extent of work) को व्यक्त करते हैं।

कौन-सा Adverb, वाक्य में किस तरह का कार्य सम्पन्न करता है, उसी के अनुसार उसका नामकरण किया जाता है। अर्थात् कार्य के रूप एवं कार्य की स्थिति के अनुसार यह बताया जा सकता है कि यह Adverb कौन-सा है।

(B) Relative Adverbs

इस तरह के Adverbs हैं : What, When, Where, Why, How, Whatever, Whither, Wherever, Whence etc. यह Adverb antecedent को refer करते हैं। यह Antecedent के साथ सम्बन्ध व्यक्त करते हैं। यदि वाक्य में Antecedent नहीं है तो Adverb एक Relative Adverb नहीं है, यह Interrogative adverb हो सकता है। जैसे:

- (a) I know where she lives. (b) I understand the point what you say.
(c) I remember the house, where he lived. (d) I forgot the time, when Puja Express arrives.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Where, What, Where, When, Relative Adverbs हैं जो antecedents के साथ सम्बन्ध को व्यक्त करते हैं। Antecedent means which comes before.

(C) Interrogative Adverbs

ये Adverbs, प्रश्न करने हेतु प्रयुक्त होते हैं। जैसे: When, how, what, where, how much, how long, how many, etc.

- (a) What is your name? (b) Where are you going?
(c) When did he come? (d) How are you?

सभी underlined शब्द Interrogative Adverbs हैं जो प्रश्न करने हेतु प्रयुक्त हुए हैं।

Yes and No Adverbs : जो Adverbs, Yes या No के रूप में पूरे वाक्य को ही स्पष्ट करते हैं Yes or No Adverbs कहलाते हैं। जैसे:

- (a) Do you know me? Yes. (Yes, I know you.)
(b) Have you played? No. (No, I haven't played.)

यहाँ Yes एवं No द्वारा दिया गया Answer पूरे वाक्य को व्यक्त करता है। ये Yes And No Adverbs कहलाते हैं।

Simple/Relative/Interrogative Adverbs

Simple Adverb वाले वाक्य Simple sentence होते हैं जबकि Relative Adverb वाले वाक्य Complex sentence होते हैं। Simple Adverb का प्रयोग वाक्य के शुरू में, मध्य में, अन्त में, कहीं भी हो सकता है, जबकि Relative Adverb वाक्य के मध्य में (Antecedent के बाद) आते हैं। Interrogative Adverb वाक्य के शुरू में प्रयुक्त होते हैं।

What is your name?

Underlined शब्द Interrogative Adverb है।

I know where she lives.

'Where' Relative Adverb है जो antecedent के साथ सम्बन्ध को व्यक्त करता है।

Adverb/Adjective

कुछ शब्द, Adverb एवं Adjective दोनों तरह प्रयुक्त हो सकते हैं। जैसे:

Adverb

- (a) He ran fast.
- (b) She has only two books.
- (c) Come back.
- (d) They work hard.

Adjective

- He is a fast runner.
- She is the only daughter of her parents.
- He entered from the back door.
- He is a hard worker.

वाक्य में शब्द के प्रयोग के आधार पर ही यह कहा जा सकता है कि यह Adverb है या Adjective है।

Remember

Most is an adjective, but almost is an adverb.

Easy is an adjective, but easily is an adverb.

Good is an adjective, but well is an adverb.

Position and Rules of Adverbs

Adverbs का प्रयोग वाक्य में किस जगह किया जाए, यह एक महत्वपूर्ण बिन्दु है। Adverb को गलत जगह पर लगाने पर, वाक्य का अर्थ ही परिवर्तित हो सकता है। नीचे लिखे वाक्यों से यह स्पष्ट हो जाता है।

- | | |
|-------------------------|---|
| (a) Only she can speak. | (केवल वह बोल सकती है) |
| (b) She can only speak. | (वह केवल बोल सकती है, लिख नहीं सकती) |
| (c) She can speak only. | (वह केवल बोल सकती है, अन्य कोई कार्य, जैसे घर का कोई कार्य, बाजार का कोई कार्य नहीं कर सकती है) |

इस तरह Adverb, only की वाक्य में स्थिति में परिवर्तन होने से वाक्य का अर्थ बदल जाता है। अतः Adverb को वाक्य में कहाँ पर लगाना है (Position of Adverb) एक महत्वपूर्ण बिन्दु है।

- (1) **Adverb of Manner** : जैसे : slowly, quickly, carefully, easily, calmly, fast etc वाक्य में verb के बाद लगाए जाते हैं, लेकिन यदि वाक्य में verb का object भी है तो object के बाद इन्हें लगाना चाहिए।

Correct use

- (a) He talks well.
- (b) He speaks English fluently.
- (c) It is raining regularly.
- (d) I read my book carefully.

Incorrect use

- He well talks.
- He speaks fluently English.
- It is regularly raining.
- I carefully read my book.

सभी underlined शब्द Adverbs of manner हैं।

- (2) **Adverb of Time एवं Adverb of Place** :

Adverb of Time : (जैसे Now, then, soon, today, next day, yet etc) एवं **Adverb of Place** : (जैसे: Here, there, on etc) भी verb के बाद लगते हैं लेकिन verb का कोई object भी है तो ये object के बाद प्रयुक्त होते हैं।

Correct use

- (a) She will come soon.
- (b) He will go to Jaipur the next day.
- (c) He has not arrived yet.
- (d) He lives here.
- (e) Ram works there.
- (f) There are books everywhere.

Incorrect use

- She soon will come.
- He will next day go to Jaipur.
- He has yet not arrived.
- He here lives.
- Ram there works.
- There are everywhere books.

Note : सभी underlined words adverbs हैं।

- (3) **Adverb of Frequency :** जैसे: Always, often, daily, generally, never, rarely एवं अन्य कुछ Adverbs जैसे almost, just, hardly, nearly, already का प्रयोग सामान्यतया subject एवं verb के बीच किया जाता है।



यदि verb में एक से अधिक शब्द हैं जैसे: has advised, have seen तो इन adverbs का प्रयोग have/has, Auxiliary verb के बाद किया जाता है।

Correct use

- (a) His mother never cooks food.
- (b) He always speaks the truth.
- (c) He often comes late.
- (d) He has never advised me.
- (e) We have never seen an aeroplane.
- (f) I have just arrived.

Incorrect use

- His mother cooks food never.
- He speaks the truth always.
- He comes late often.
- He never has advised me.
- We never have seen an aeroplane.
- I just have arrived.

(A) यदि वाक्य में is/am/are/was/were जैसी Auxiliary verbs का प्रयोग हुआ हो तो ये Adverbs इनके बाद लगते हैं। जैसे:

- (a) He is always ready.
- (b) She is often late.
- (c) They are generally late.
- (d) We are always happy.

(B) यदि वाक्य में verb को Importance देनी हो, जोर देना हो या short answer देना हो तो इन adverbs को Auxiliary verb या verb के पहले प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) She has again forgotten to bring the keys.
Yes, she always does forget to bring the keys. or Yes, she always does.
- (b) Do you go by car?
Yes, I usually do.

(C) Auxiliary; have to/used to के साथ उक्त Adverbs का प्रयोग उनसे पूर्व किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) I often have to go on foot.
- (b) He always used to take umbrella.
- (c) She never has to walk alone.

(D) Adverb, not का प्रयोग हमेशा Auxiliary के बाद एवं Principal verb के पहले किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) I have not done my work.
- (b) He did not go to Jaipur.
- (c) She will not write an application.
- (d) I do not go to school.



- (4) **Adverb :** Enough का प्रयोग उस शब्द के बाद किया जाता है, जिसे वह qualify करता है। enough से पहले हमेशा positive degree का adjective या Adverb रहेगा। Comparative degree के बाद enough का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे:

- (a) I have money enough to buy a shirt.
- (b) The building is large enough for the guest house.
- (c) I have time enough to have lunch.
- (d) They have clothes enough to wear for a week.



जब enough का प्रयोग adjective की तरह होता है तो यह noun की विशेषता बताता है तब यह noun के पहले या बाद में आ सकता है लेकिन जब यह adverb की तरह प्रयुक्त होता है तो हमेशा बाद में लगता है।

- (5) **Adverb:** only एवं even को हमेशा उस word से पहले लगाना चाहिए, जिसके लिए इनका प्रयोग किया जाता है।

(a) I cannot write even correct Hindi.

(b) He has only one car. (उसके पास एक कार है)

(c) Only he has a car. (केवल उसके पास कार है)

(d) He cannot do even this work.

(6) Order of Adverbs यदि एक वाक्य में कई तरह के Adverbs का प्रयोग हुआ हो तो सबसे पहले Adverb of manner, फिर Adverb of place एवं फिर Adverb of time आता है।

(a) She spoke loudly at the meeting yesterday. (b) He is crying loudly at the field now.

1 2 3 1 2 3

(c) He was going to Jaipur yesterday. (d) She comes regularly at the ground daily.

2 3 1 2 3

उक्त वाक्यों में

1. Adverb of Manner —	M			
2. Adverb of Place —	P			
3. Adverb of Time —	T. को व्यक्त करते हैं।			

M	P	T
1	2	3



यदि वाक्य में कई Adverbs of time का प्रयोग हो तो सबसे पहले, सबसे छोटा Time फिर उससे बड़ा, फिर सबसे बड़े Time को रखा जाना चाहिए। जैसे:

- (a) He came here at 7 O' clock in the morning on Monday.
(b) She was born at 6 O' clock in the evening on Sunday in 1987.

- (7) यदि कोई Adverb किसी adverb / adjective या adverbial phrase को modify करता है तो उस adverb को पहले लगाते हैं। जैसे :
- (a) His speech was very funny . (b) She is very intelligent.
(c) He likes very sweet mangoes. (d) They were standing close beside the canteen.
- (8) जब Adverb सारे वाक्यों को ही संशोधित करता है तो उसे वाक्य के शुरू में प्रयोग करते हैं। जैसे:
- (a) Certainly she will meet us there. (b) Luckily we escaped unhurt.
(c) Always help the poor.
- (9) जब किसी वाक्य में not का प्रयोग किया गया हो तो negative adverb का प्रयोग नहीं करना चाहिए। वाक्य में Double negative होना गलत है। जैसे:
- (a) I will not find her nowhere. *Incorrect*
I will not find her anywhere. *Correct*
(b) No one scarcely visits here. *Incorrect*
No one visits here. *Correct*
- (10) Else के साथ हमेशा 'but' Adverb का प्रयोग किया जाता है। 'than' का प्रयोग करना गलत है। जैसे:
- (a) Go anywhere else than Pakistan. *Incorrect*
Go anywhere else but Pakistan. *Correct*
(b) Call her any thing else than bitch. *Incorrect*
Call her any thing else but bitch. *Correct*
- (11) Intransitive verbs के साथ Adverb का प्रयोग verb के तुरन्त बाद ही किया जाता है। जैसे:
- (a) He died calmly. (b) She spoke softly.
(c) He disappeared immediately.

Comparatives of Adverbs

- (a) जिस प्रकार Adjective की तीन Degrees of comparison होती हैं उसी प्रकार कुछ Adverb की भी तीन तुलनात्मक अवस्थाएँ होती हैं: (1) Positive degree (2) Comparative degree (3) Superlative degree.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
(1) Short	Shorter	Shortest
(2) Late	Later	Latest /Last
(3) Hard	Harder	Hardest
(4) Fast	Faster	Fastest
She ran fast.	She ran faster.	She ran the fastest of all girls.

इस तरह के Adverbs में comparative degree बनाने हेतु er तथा superlative degree बनाने हेतु est लगाते हैं।

- (b) कुछ Adverb के अन्त में ly आता है, उनकी Comparative degree बनाने के लिए more तथा Superlative degree बनाने के लिए most का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Slowly	More slowly	Most slowly
Wisely	More wisely	Most wisely
Swiftly	More swiftly	Most swiftly
Skilfully	More skilfully	Most skilfully

- (1) He ran *swiftly*.
 (2) He *ran more swiftly* than Ramesh.
 (3) He *ran most swiftly* among all students.

लेकिन **early, more early, most early** गलत है।

क्योंकि early—earlier—earliest होता है।

नीचे कुछ adverb की Comparative एवं Superlative degree बताई गई है।

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
badly, ill	worse	worst
well	better	best
little	less	least
much	more	most
far	farther	farthest
forth	further	furthest
near	nearer	nearest



Adverb of Manner, Adverb of Degree एवं Adverb of Time के अतिरिक्त अन्य प्रकार के Adverbs की Comparative या Superlative degree नहीं बनाई जा सकती है। When, then, where, there, once इत्यादि की भी Comparative या Superlative degree नहीं बनाई जा सकती है।

Some Important Adverbs

Too, Much/Very, Very much/much, Too much/Much too/ only too, Since/Ever Since, Presently/Just now, Late/Lately, Hard/Hardly, Most/Mostly, Before/Ago, No/Not/So, Still/Yet/Already, There, Fairly/Rather, Just, Early/Soon/Quickly, Seldom or never/Seldom if ever.

- (1) 'Too': इसका अर्थ होता है, More than enough अर्थात् excess (अतिशय)। Too का प्रयोग very के अर्थ में करना गलत है। Very का अर्थ होता है बहुत, जबकि 'Too' का अर्थ होता है excess (अतिशय)। यदि हम किसी मित्र को देखकर यह कहें I am too glad to meet you. तो इसका अर्थ होगा कि "मैं आपसे मिलकर इतना खुश हूँ जितना नहीं होना चाहिए।"

(A) **Too + infinitive:** Too के बाद 'to' infinitive का प्रयोग एक negativity व्यक्त करता है। जैसे:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| (a) He is too weak to walk. | वह इतना अधिक कमजोर है कि चल नहीं सकता। |
| (b) She is too poor to pay her fee. | वह इतनी गरीब है कि अपनी फीस जमा नहीं करा सकती। |

(B) 'Too' का प्रयोग भी के लिए किया जाता है; जैसे:

- (a) He too went to America.
(b) He lost his bag and books too.

(C) 'Too' का निम्न प्रयोग करना भी उचित है। यहाँ too का अर्थ अत्यधिक से है; जैसे:

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|
| (a) You are too weak in English. | (b) He is too poor. |
| (c) She is too ugly. | (d) Ram is too dull. |

(2) Much / Very :

(A) Much का प्रयोग Comparative degree के Adverb या Adjective के पहले किया जाता है। जबकि very का प्रयोग Positive degree है। जैसे:

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| (a) Ram is much stronger than Rahim. | (b) She is much more beautiful than Sarla. |
| (c) Ram is a very strong man. | (d) Sarla is a very intelligent girl. |

(B) Very much का प्रयोग Comparative degree से पूर्व किया जाता है। जैसे:

- (a) He is very much stronger than Sonu.
(b) Suresh is very much cleverer than Shalu.

(C) जब Superlative degree के साथ much का प्रयोग किया जाता है। तो यह 'the' के पहले आता है, जबकि very का प्रयोग 'the' के साथ तथा superlative के पहले होगा। जैसे:

- (a) Nisha is much the best girl in the college.
(b) Rahul is much the best sportsman in the town.
(c) Nisha is the very best girl in the college.
(d) Rahul is the very best sportsman in the town.

(D) Much 'एवं very में एक महत्वपूर्ण अन्तर यह है कि much का प्रयोग past participle या verb के साथ होता है, जबकि very का प्रयोग present participle के साथ किया जाता है। जैसे:

- | | |
|---|----------------------------|
| (a) He was much shocked. | <i>Past Participle</i> |
| (b) She was much surprised. | <i>Past Participle</i> |
| (c) The news is very interesting. | <i>Present Participle</i> |
| (d) The situation was very distressing. | <i>Present Participle</i> |
| (e) She talks much. | (He talks very—यह गलत है) |
| (f) He boasts much. | (He boasts very—यह गलत है) |

(E) कुछ phrases में past participle के साथ very का स्वतः ही प्रयोग होता है। जैसे: very pleased, very tired, very dejected etc.

(3) **Very much / much** : सकारात्मक वाक्यों (Affirmative sentences) में very much का प्रयोग किया जाता है, जबकि negative sentences में much का ही प्रयोग होता है। जैसे:

- (a) I like her very much.
- (b) I don't like her much.
- (c) She works very much.
- (d) She doesn't work much.

(4) **Too much / much too / only too** : Too much या much too दोनों का अर्थ समान है। Too much के प्रयोग के बाद noun का प्रयोग होता है एवं much too के प्रयोग के बाद Adjective या Participle का प्रयोग किया जाता है। दोनों का अर्थ है: excess, more than limits, इतना ज्यादा जितना नहीं होना चाहिए। जैसे:

- (a) His behaviour gave me too much pain. *Noun*
- (b) His behaviour was much too painful. *Adjective*

Only too : Only too का अर्थ होता है बहुत (very) इसका प्रयोग very के अर्थ में किया जा सकता है

He will be only too happy to meet you.

Means = He will be very happy to meet you.



Only too का अर्थ too से पूर्णतया अलग है।

(5) **Since/Ever since** : Since का प्रयोग perfect tense में किया जाता है इसका अर्थ होता है: जब से, तब से I have been playing football since 7 O'clock.

कभी-कभी वाक्य में since का प्रयोग अन्त में किया जाता है एवं इससे पूर्व ever का प्रयोग किया जाता है। Ever since का अर्थ होता है, तब से जैसे:

- (a) I first met her three years ago and have remembered her face ever since.
- (b) I saw her five years ago and had been trying to meet her ever since.

(6) **Presently / Just now** : Presently का अर्थ at present (इस समय) के लिए एवं शीघ्र (soon) ही future में होने वाले कार्य के लिए किया जाता है। Just now का प्रयोग वर्तमान में पूर्ण होने वाले कार्य (Present Perfect) हेतु किया जाता है। जैसे:

- (a) I am presently busy.
- (b) I shall discuss the matter presently.
- (c) I shall go presently.
- (d) He has arrived just now.
- (e) I have completed my work just now.
- (f) She has gone out just now.

Just now का अर्थ a moment ago भी होता है। इस अर्थ में इसका प्रयोग Past Tense में किया जाता है। जैसे:

- (a) Did you hear a noise just now?
- (b) She rang up just now.

(7) **Late / Lately** : Late का अर्थ है देरी से, जबकि Lately का अर्थ होता है: 'अभी' (Recently). जैसे:

- (a) He came late today.
- (b) He has come lately. *Recently*
- (c) She has finished her work lately.
- (d) You are late.

Lately का प्रयोग present perfect में होता है, क्योंकि यह वर्तमान में पूर्ण होने वाले कार्य को व्यक्त करता है।

(8) **Hard/Hardly** : Hard का अर्थ होता है कठिन, जबकि Hardly का अर्थ Negative में नहीं से लिया जाता है। जैसे:

- (a) He works hard. वह कड़ी मेहनत करता है।
- (b) He hardly works. वह लगभग कार्य नहीं करता है।

(9) **Most / Mostly** : Most का अर्थ है सबसे अधिक, जबकि Mostly का अर्थ है, अधिकांश भाग। जैसे:

- (a) He is the most intelligent student of all.
- (b) The candidates were mostly from rural area.
- (c) The audience consisted mostly of girls.

(10) Before/Ago दोनों का अर्थ है पहले। Before का प्रयोग Past या Present Perfect के साथ हो सकता है, जबकि Ago का प्रयोग Present Perfect के साथ नहीं हो सकता है। जैसे:

- (a) I never before seen such a beautiful lady.
 - (b) I have visited this place before.
 - (c) I came here two days ago.
 - (d) He died three days ago.
- He has arrived ten minutes ago. *Incorrect*

(Present perfect के साथ Ago का प्रयोग नहीं किया जा सकता है।)

(11) **No/Not/So** : Not का प्रयोग Auxiliary के बाद किया जाता है जबकि No का प्रयोग Noun से पूर्व किया जाता है। जैसे:

- (a) I have no pen.
- (b) I haven't any pen.
- (c) He has no idea.
- (d) He does not have any idea.

(A) कुछ verbs जैसे: believe, think expect, suppose, afraid के साथ not का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार भी हो सकता है :

- (a) Will she cooperate you? I believe not.
- (b) Can you help me? I'm afraid not.
- (c) Does she like you? I think not.



(B) इस तरह की verb (believe, think expect, suppose, afraid) के साथ so का प्रयोग noun clause के एवज में निम्न प्रकार से किया जाता है:

- (a) Is he alright? Yes, I think so.
- (b) Will he cooperate you? Yes I hope so.

(C) Not का प्रयोग यदि infinitive या gerund के साथ हो तो 'not' हमेशा infinitive एवं gerund के पहले लगाया जाएगा :

- (a) I advised him not to smoke.
- (b) You are right in not helping her.

(12) **Still/Yet/Already** :

(A) Still का प्रयोग वर्तमान में हो रहे कार्य के लिए किया जाता है। भूतकाल (Past) के लिए इसका सामान्यतया प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे:

- (a) He is still asleep.
- (b) It is still raining.

(B) Not yet का प्रयोग भविष्य में पूर्ण होने की आशा वाले कार्यों के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे:

- (a) Has she come? not yet.
- (b) The jeep hasn't arrived yet.

(C) प्रश्न के साथ yet का प्रयोग ऐसे कार्य हेतु किया जाता है जिनके पूर्ण होने की आशा थी, वे पूर्ण हुए या नहीं? जैसे:

- (a) Is lunch ready yet?
- (b) Has the jeep arrived yet?



सामान्यतया yet वाक्य के अन्त में आता है।

Yet का प्रयोग अधिकांशतया Negative एवं Interrogative वाक्यों में किया जाता है। Affirmative वाक्यों में yet का प्रयोग 'still' के समान ही किया जाता है।

We have yet to hear from the government.

(We are still waiting to hear from the government.)

Already : इसका अर्थ है पहले से, जब कोई कार्य आशा से पहले पूर्ण हुआ होता है तो सामान्यतया Already का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे:

- (a) When is she coming? She is already here
- (b) You must visit Agra. I have already visited.



तीनों words (still, yet, already) का प्रयोग past moment बताने के लिए भी हो सकता है। जैसे :

I went to see if she had woke up yet. But she was still asleep.

This was irritating as her friends had already arrived.

Position in a sentence : Still एवं already का प्रयोग सामान्यतया वाक्य के मध्य में किया जाता है। कुछ स्थिति में already का प्रयोग वाक्य के अन्त में भी हो सकता है। जैसे :

Are you here already? You must have come by some fast mode.

Yet सामान्यतया वाक्य के अन्त में आता है। Not के साथ yet उसके तुरन्त बाद लगता है। जैसे:

(a) Don't eat the apples, they aren't yet ripe.

(b) The apples are not yet ripe.

(13) There: इसका प्रयोग जब वाक्य के शुरू में किसी चीज के होने को बताता है, तो वाक्य में subject अनिश्चित रहता है। ऐसे वाक्यों का Structure निम्न प्रकार का होता है

There + to be form of verb +

(a) There is a glass on the table.

(b) There are two books under the bed.

(14) Fairly/Rather: Fairly का प्रयोग good sense में तथा Rather का प्रयोग bad sense में होता है। दोनों का अर्थ 'मात्रा' को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे:

(a) The weather is rather hot.

Correct

The weather is fairly hot.

Incorrect

(b) Coffee is fairly hot.

Correct

(इसका अर्थ है; कॉफी अच्छी गर्म है)

Coffee is rather hot.

Incorrect

(इसका अर्थ है; कॉफी न पसन्द आने योग्य गर्म है)

(c) I like her as she is rather beautiful.

Incorrect

I like as she is fairly beautiful.

Correct

(15) Just: इसका अर्थ है 'सभी'। Just का प्रयोग सामान्यतया Present Perfect में किया जाता है :

(a) He has just arrived.

(b) They have just gone out.

Just का अर्थ एकदम सही समय हेतु भी किया जाता है। तब इसका प्रयोग Simple Past में भी किया जा सकता है। जैसे:

(a) They just caught the train.

(b) She just managed to leave.

Just का प्रयोग समय हेतु निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है :

(a) It has just struck seven.

अभी-अभी 7 बजे हैं।

(b) It has just struck three.

अभी-अभी 3 बजे हैं।

(16) Early/Soon/Quickly : Early का प्रयोग Adjective एवं Adverb दोनों तरह से किया जाता है। जैसे :

(a) He came in early morning.

(b) Roses blossomed early this spring.

early का यहाँ अर्थ है, सुबह शुरू होने के तुरन्त बाद या बसंत शुरू होने के तुरन्त बाद। Early का प्रयोग निर्धारित समय से पूर्व के लिए भी होता है। जैसे:

(a) She came early in the meeting.

(b) The Chief guest came early.

जबकि, soon का प्रयोग after a point of time, के अर्थ में किया जाता है। जैसे:

(a) She came to meet me soon after Ram arrived.

(b) Get well soon.

(c) The work was hard, but she soon used to it.

'Soon' means a short time after a point of time.

Quickly : इसका अर्थ, कार्य करने की गति से लिया जाता है।

Come and see us quickly.

(Means make the arrangement fast)

Come and see us soon.

(Means come and see us before long)

He did the repair quickly but not very well.

I hope you can do the repair soon. I need the car.

(Michael Swan. *Practical English Usage*.)

(17) Seldom or never/ Seldom if ever : Seldom के साथ या तो or never या if ever आता है। (Seldom or ever लिखना गलत है) जैसे:

- (a) She seldom or never tells lies.
- (b) She seldom if ever asks the boys the reason of their absence.

Adverb vs Preposition

ध्यान रखें Adverb से पूर्व Preposition का प्रयोग करना गलत है। Adverb से पूर्व Preposition का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे:

- (a) With most humbly I beg to draw. *Incorrect*
- (b) You should speak with patiently and with confidently. *Incorrect*

इन वाक्यों में with का प्रयोग सर्वथा गलत है। ध्यान रखें।

(1) वाक्य में जब *this/last/next/all* के बाद समय बताने वाले शब्दों जैसे: *Morning, Evening, Noon, Night, Day, Week, Month, Year* etc का प्रयोग होता है इनके साथ *Preposition* का प्रयोग नहीं किया है, क्योंकि ऐसी स्थिति में ये '*Adverb of time*' की तरह प्रयुक्त होते हैं। जैसा हमने बताया है *Adverb* के साथ *Preposition* का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे:



- (a) They reached here *this morning*.
- (b) She will go to Jaipur *next Monday*.
- (c) She worked *all morning/ evening*.
- (d) Ram will come *next year*.
- (e) Sita was married *last year*.
- (f) We came here *last week*.

(2) जब समय बताने वाले शब्दों से पूर्व *this/last/next/all* जैसे शब्द नहीं आते हैं तो *Preposition* का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे:

- (a) He will go *in the morning*.
- (b) We will meet you *in the evening*.

(3) इसी तरह '*Home*' जो एक *noun* है, यदि इससे पूर्व कोई *adjective* नहीं लगा है तो यह वाक्य में *adverb of place* की तरह प्रयुक्त होता है। ऐसी स्थिति में इसके पूर्व कोई *adverb* (जैसे '*to*') नहीं लगाते हैं। जैसे:

- (a) She goes home *everyday*.
- (b) I go home *in the evening*.

Adverb vs Infinitive (Split Infinitive)

Traditional Grammar में Infinitive (*to+Verb*) के मध्य *adverb* का आना गलत माना जाता है। जैसे:

I request you to kindly pay my salary today.

ऐसा माना जा रहा है कि *To pay* (Infinitive) के बीच *Kindly* (Adverb) का आना गलत है। इसे *Split Infinitive* कहा जाता है। लेकिन Modern English में एक *Adverb* तक Infinitive के मध्य आना प्रचलन में आ गया है एवं विभिन्न विद्वानों ने इसे उचित ठहराया है।

Split Infinitive with a single adverb may be allowed —G.H. Vallins

I request you to kindly grant me one day leave.

एक से अधिक *Adverb* को लिखना आज भी गलत नहीं माना जाता है।



Infinitive के बीच '*not*' का प्रयोग पूर्णतया गलत है। जैसे :

- I asked him to not go there.* *Incorrect*
- I asked him not to go there.* *Correct*



TEST YOURSELF Exercises

01

Correct the following sentences:

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) She takes generally her breakfast at 8 A.M. | (2) Ram only came here last Saturday. |
| (3) Ramesh was too tired when he came here. | (4) Sita came quicker than I expected. |
| (5) We wanted a better and efficient Office Assistant. | (6) It was much cold last night. |
| (7) I visited her frequently while in New York. | (8) He will be quite sorry to know that. |
| (9) The water of this tank is too cold. | (10) He ran very fastly. |

02

Correct the following sentences:

- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) Hari was fortunately not available in the hostel. | (2) It was nothing else than her arrogance. |
| (3) He feels comparatively better today. | (4) Come at 7 O'clock to my office. |
| (5) I seldom or ever refused the leave. | (6) He quickly ran away from the site. |
| (7) Firstly you think over the words and then speak. | (8) I go often to the Durga Temple. |
| (9) No one hardly goes to church daily. | (10) I care a straw for it. |

03

Correct the following sentences:

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) We were very delighted to get the news. | (2) Call me anything else than a fraud. |
| (3) They could not find her nowhere. | (4) I only solved two sums. |
| (5) She peacefully died yesterday. | (6) Do you know to drive? |
| (7) I went directly to Meerut. | |
| (8) It is very cold to go for a walk today. | |
| (9) Parul runs fastly than Nalini. | |
| (10) If you run fast, you would have won the race. | |

04

Correct the following sentences:

- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) Hari speaks clear. | (2) Sita writes neat. |
| (3) Sarla hit the thief hardly on the head. | (4) He is perfectly quite right. |
| (5) The speaker spoke enough loud to be heard easily. | |
| (6) Ram is much old. | (7) The story is much interesting. |
| (8) Ram comes here seldom. | (9) I am very satisfied with her conduct. |
| (10) The train will arrive just now. | |
| (11) The film was mostly over when you entered. | |
| (12) He fared bad in the second innings. | |
| (13) Repeat again what you have said. | |
| (14) Breathe deeply when you walk. | |

05

Correct the following sentences:

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) He cautiously drives. | (2) She heartily loves Ram. |
| (3) There were everywhere flowers in the garden. | (4) Ram comes at the field regularly everyday. |
| (5) She has been absenting herself frequently from the office. | |
| (6) Ram already has finished his work. | (7) I see her frequently in the market. |
| (8) She has often to go by tram. | (9) He is intelligent wonderfully. |
| (10) Sita regularly visits her friend Sarla. | |

06

Correct the following sentences:

- (1) I drive seldom after sunset.
- (2) He explained clearly the method of transplantation the heart.
- (3) The parents heartily love their children.
- (4) Three passengers were unfortunately injured.
- (5) You are forbidden not to write on the table.
- (6) The day is hot too.
- (7) I was too tired after the swimming.
- (8) Sita loves her only daughter too much.
- (9) The new medicines have given her too much relief.
- (10) I met none else than your real brother.

07

Correct the following sentences:

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) She quickly writes. | |
| (2) Unless you do not work hard, you can't succeed. | |
| (3) The news is much interesting. | |
| (4) He seldom or ever refuses a genuine request. | |
| (5) You seldom or ever find a grammatical error in this book. | |
| (6) Ram ran very fastly. | |
| (7) They last evening went to Jaipur. | (8) I only solved two sums in an hour. |
| (9) The matter has been very discussed. | (10) I do not know to swim. |

08

Correct the following sentences:

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) They have gone to Jaipur yesterday. | (2) He has left this place five minutes ago. |
| (3) Do you know him? Yes, I donot. | (4) Do you know him? No, I do. |
| (5) The teacher asked him to not sleep in the class. | |
| (6) Could you lend me your umbrella? Oh, no, I can. | |
| (7) She will today go to Mumbai. | |
| (8) With most humbly and respectfully, I beg to apprise..... | |
| (9) I have not pen with me. | |
| (10) There was no an intelligent student to solve that question. | |

Spotting the Errors (Adverbs)

09

Read the following sentences to find whether there is any error in any part:

- (1) "Under no circumstances (a)/ we can help you (b)/ in this immoral project." (c)/said the Chairman. (d)/No error (e)
- (2) Somebody informed (a)/ the contractor that his (b)/ brother had only died (c)/ five days before. (d)/No error (e)
- (3) She is very senior (a)/ to me, so I (b)/cannot defy her orders. (c)/ No error (d)
- (4) Who can believe (a)/ that she was not (b)/ hardly hit (c)/ by the death of her son. (d)/No error (e)
- (5) Hardly she likes (a)/ to hear my name (b)/ after the dispute which occurred (c) / between us last year. (d)/No error (e)
- (6) Only by discussing with (a)/ the officer concerned (b)/ they found out (c)/ the person behind the fraud. (d)/No error (e)
- (7) The house is very good (a)/ but too much small (b)/ to accommodate (c)/ the full family. (d)/No error (e)
- (8) He does not (a)/ know to make (b)/ friends so he is leading (c)/ a lonely life. (d)/No error (e)
- (9) Every member of the family (a)/ is addicted to drinking (b)/ and so Asha is. (c)/ No error (d)
- (10) He was very tired (a)/ of work so he said (b)/ that he would (c)/ not accompany us. (d)/No error (e)

10

Read the following sentences to find whether there is any error in any part:

- (1) Shakshi was exorbitantly paid (a)/ for how skilful she (b)/ welcomed the visitors. (c)/ No error (d)
- (2) She is almost quite competent (a)/for the post of Marketing Executive (b)/so if given a chance (c)/ she can show the results. (d)/No error (e)
- (3) The student requested (a)/ the principal to be enough kind (b)/ to grant him seven days leave. (c)/No error (d)
- (4) He has been trying (a)/ to persuade her for several months (b)/ but he has (c)/ not still succeeded. (d)/No error (e)
- (5) Before the game he felt surely (a)/ of winning, but within five minutes (b)/ he realised that he was wrong. (c)/ No error (d)
- (6) The amount which the company (a)/ paid to the dependents of (b)/ the deceased was (c)/ fairly unjustified. (d)/No error (e)
- (7) Although he only earns (a)/ sixteen hundred rupees per month (b)/ yet he manages his (c)/ family well. (d)/No error (e)
- (8) I liked that opportune moment (a)/ where the workers proved themselves (b)/ and came out victorious. (c)/ No error (d)
- (9) Where else (a)/ did you go besides (b)/ the bank? (c)/ No error (d)
- (10) I hardly ever (a)/ see him (b)/ because in my opinion (c)/he is not a reliable man. (d)/No error (e)
- (11) He is a linguist (a)/ and always tries to (b)/ make his students (c)/ pronounce the words correctly. (d)/No error (e)

**SOLUTIONS****TEST YOURSELF***Exercises***Solution TYE : 01**

- (1) Generally she takes her breakfast at 8 A.M.
- (2) Ram came here only last Saturday.
- (3) Ramesh was much tired when he came here.
- (4) Sita came quickly than I expected.
- (5) We wanted a better and more efficient Office Assistant.
- (6) It was very cold last night.
- (7) I frequently visited her while in New York.
- (8) He will be very sorry to know that.
- (9) The water of this tank is very cold.
- (10) He ran very fast.

Solution TYE : 02

- (1) Fortunately Hari was not available in the hostel.
- (2) It was nothing else but her arrogance.
- (3) He feels better today.
- (4) Come to my office at 7 O'clock.
- (5) I seldom or never refused the leave.
- (6) He ran away quickly from the site.
- (7) First you think over the words and then speak.
- (8) I often go to the Durga Temple.
- (9) Hardly any one goes to church daily.
- (10) I do not care a straw for it.

Solution TYE : 03

- (1) We were much delighted to get the news.
- (2) Call me anything else but a fraud.
- (3) They could not find her anywhere.
- (4) I solved only two sums.
- (5) She died peacefully yesterday.
- (6) Do you know how to drive?
- (7) I went direct to Meerut.
- (8) It is too cold to go for a walk today.
- (9) Parul runs faster than Nalini.
- (10) Had you run fast you would have won the race.

Solution TYE : 04

- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) Hari speaks clearly. | (2) Sita writes neatly. |
| (3) Sarla hit the thief hard on the head. | (4) He is perfectly right. |
| (5) The speaker spoke loud enough to be heard easily. | |
| (6) Ram is very old. | (7) The story is very interesting. |
| (8) Ram seldom comes here. | (9) I am much satisfied with her conduct. |
| (10) The train will arrive shortly. | (11) The film was almost over when you entered. |
| (12) He fared badly in the second innings. | (13) Repeat what you have said. |
| (14) Breathe deep when you walk. | |

Solution TYE : 05

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) He drives cautiously . | |
| (2) She loves Ram heartily. | |
| (3) There were flowers everywhere in the garden. | |
| (4) Ram comes regularly at the field everyday. | |
| (5) She has been frequently absenting herself from the office. | |
| (6) Ram has already finished his work. | (7) I frequently see her in the market. |
| (8) She often has to go by tram. | (9) He is wonderfully intelligent . |
| (10) Sita visits her friend Sarla regularly. | |

Solution TYE : 06

- (1) I seldom drive after sunset.
- (2) He clearly explained the method of transplantation the heart.
- (3) The parents love their children heartily.
- (4) Unfortunately three passengers were injured.
- (5) You are forbidden to write on the table.
- (6) The day is too hot.
- (7) I was very tired after the swimming.
- (8) Sita loves her only daughter very much.
- (9) The new medicines have given her much relief.
- (10) I met none else but your real brother.

Solution TYE : 07

- (1) She writes quickly.
- (2) Unless you work hard, you can't succeed.
- (3) The news is very interesting.
- (4) He seldom or never refuses a genuine request.
- (5) You seldom or never find a grammatical error in this book.
- (6) Ram ran very fast.
- (7) They went to Jaipur last evening.
- (8) I solved only two sums in an hour.
- (9) The matter has been much discussed.
- (10) I do not know how to swim.

Solution TYE : 08

- (1) They went to Jaipur yesterday.
- (2) He left this place five minutes ago.
- (3) Do you know him? Yes, I do .
- (4) Do you know him? No, I don't.
- (5) The teacher asked him not to sleep in the class.
- (6) Could you lend me your umbrella? Oh, no, I can't.
- (7) She will go to Mumbai today.
- (8) Most humbly and respectfully, I beg to apprise.....
- (9) I have no pen with me.
- (10) There was not an intelligent student to solve that question.

Solution TYE : 09

- (1) (b) "We can" की जगह can we आएगा। जब वाक्य Under no circumstances से शुरू होता है तो Verb, Subject से पहले (Inversion is applied) आती है।
- (2) (c) Only का प्रयोग died के बाद होगा। brother had died only five days before. He only died का अर्थ है 'केवल वह मेरा' He died only three days ago. का अर्थ है 'वह केवल तीन दिन पहले मरा'।
- (3) (a) Very senior की जगह much senior लिखें।
Very का प्रयोग Positive degree के adjective के पूर्व किया जाता है। much का प्रयोग comparative degree के adjective के पूर्व किया जाता है। जैसे:
He is a very strong boy.
He is much stronger than you.
- (4) (c) Hardly hit की जगह hit hard लिखें। hardly का अर्थ 'न के बराबर' (negative) होता है, जबकि hard का अर्थ 'कठिन'/'कड़ा' होता है।
- (5) (a) Hardly does she like लिखें। जब वाक्य Hardly, Seldom से शुरू होते हैं तो Auxiliary verb, Subject से पहले (Inversion is applied) आती है।
- (6) (a) Only को 'with' से पहले लिखें। By discussing only with. Only का प्रयोग सामान्यतया उस word से पहले किया जाता है जिसे महत्व दिया जा रहा है।
- (7) (b) Too much की जगह much too small होना चाहिए।
सामान्यतया too much का प्रयोग noun से पूर्व होता है, much too का प्रयोग adjective से पूर्व होता है।
जैसे:
It gives me too much pleasure.
It is much too pleasure some.
- (8) (b) Know to make की जगह know how to make होगा। जैसे:
I know how to swim.
He knows how to cook .
- (9) (c) So Asha is की जगह so is Asha होगा। इस तरह के वाक्यों में सहायक क्रिया Subject से पहले आती है।
जैसे: (Inversion is applied) :
I don't like such cheap things nor does she.
- (10) (e) वाक्य सही है।

Solution TYE : 10

- (1) (b) How skilfully होगा skilful एक adjective है जबकि यहाँ skilfully (Adverb), verb received को qualify कर रहा है।
- (2) (a) Almost का प्रयोग गलत है। quite से पहले किसी adverb का प्रयोग किया जाता है।
- (3) (b) to be kind enough होगा। enough (as adverb) का प्रयोग उस शब्द के बाद आता है। जिसे वह qualify कर रहा है। जैसे :
- He is intelligent enough to solve this problem .
- लेकिन enough का प्रयोग adjective के रूप में noun से पूर्व एवं बाद में दोनों तरह हो सकता है जैसे:
- I have enough money.
- I have money enough to
- (4) (d) Still की जगह yet आएगा। not succeeded yet. Still का प्रयोग affirmative वाक्यों में होता है, जबकि yet का प्रयोग सामान्यतया negative वाक्यों में किया जाता है।
- (5) (a) Surely की जगह sure लिखें। verbs of perception जैसे: feel, smell, appear, look, seem आदि अपने बाद Adjective लेते हैं, न कि Adverb.
- (6) (d) Fairly की जगह rather या quite का प्रयोग करें। Fairly का प्रयोग सामान्यतया good sense में होता है।
- (7) (a) He earns only होगा only, almost, even etc. का प्रयोग हमेशा उस Phrase या शब्द से पहले किया जाता है जिसे वह qualify करता है। जैसे:
- (1) Only she visited the temple.
- (2) She gave him only three rupees.
- (8) (b) Where की जगह when का प्रयोग होगा। 'Where'—adverb of place है तथा time के लिए Adverb of time, 'when' का प्रयोग किया जाता है।
- (9) (a) Else delete करें यहाँ else लगाने की आवश्यकता नहीं है, क्योंकि besides का प्रयोग किया गया है। Besides एवं else का यहाँ एक ही अर्थ है।
- (10) (e) वाक्य सही हैं। Hardly ever का अर्थ 'बहुत कम' होता है।
- (11) (b) And so he always tries to होना चाहिए। जैसे: She is intelligent, so she can solve it.

THE VERBS

Verb (क्रिया) Latin भाषा में शब्द Verbum से निकलता है। इसका अर्थ है a word (एक शब्द)। verb से कार्य का करना या होना स्पष्ट होता है। **कोई भी वाक्य बिना Verb के अपूर्ण है, अधूरा है। Verb वाक्य का एक महत्वपूर्ण part है।** Verb को निम्न प्रकार से वर्गीकृत किया जा सकता है :



नीचे लिखे वाक्यों को देखें :

- (a) I am playing —am (auxiliary verb), play (main verb)
- (b) He is writing—is (auxiliary verb), write (main verb)
- (c) They are reading—are (auxiliary verb), read (main verb)

Main Verbs

(1) Transitive Verbs (सकर्मक क्रियाएँ)

ऐसी verbs जिनके साथ object प्रयुक्त हो, Transitive verbs कहलाती हैं। Transitive का अर्थ है passing over अर्थात् जिन verbs में action कर्ता तक ही सीमित नहीं रहकर Object (किसी अन्य वस्तु) पर pass over होता है। जैसे :

(a) Ramesh hits a ball.

(b) He rings the bell.

यहाँ hits एवं rings, transitive verb की तरह प्रयुक्त हुई हैं जिनमें action कर्ता तक ही सीमित नहीं रहा है बल्कि Object; ball एवं bell पर pass over हुआ है।

सामान्यतया verbs से 'क्या' या 'किसको' प्रश्न करने पर यदि हमें उत्तर प्राप्त होता है तो वह verb, Transitive है। जैसे उपरोक्त वाक्य (a) से 'क्या' प्रश्न करने पर हमें 'a ball' उत्तर मिला। अतः hits एक Transitive verb है।

(2) Intransitive Verbs (असकर्मक क्रियाएँ)

Intransitive verbs में action कर्ता तक ही सीमित रहता है, object पर pass over नहीं होता है। जैसे :

(a) He sleeps in the bed.

(b) Shyam speaks loudly.

इन वाक्यों में verb; sleeps एवं speaks, intransitive verbs हैं, इनमें action कर्ता एक ही सीमित रह गया है। किसी object पर pass over नहीं हुआ है। इन verbs से 'क्या' 'किसको' प्रश्न करने पर कोई उत्तर प्राप्त नहीं होता है।

Important : अधिकांश verbs का प्रयोग Transitivity एवं Intransitively दोनों प्रकार से हो सकता है।

Read the following sentences :

Verbs used Transitivity

- (a) He **speaks** the truth.
- (b) The students **rang** the ball.
- (c) He **flies** kites.

Verbs used Intransitively

- (a) Sita **speaks** slowly.
- (b) The bell **rang** loudly.
- (c) A bird **flies**.



- (a) जब verb का प्रयोग transitively होता है तो इसके साथ object अवश्य आता है लेकिन जब verb का प्रयोग Intransitively होता है तो इसके साथ कोई object नहीं आता है।
- (b) किसी भी verb के लिए यह कहना कि यह transitive verb है या Intransitive verb है गलत है। इसकी बजाय हमें यह कहना चाहिए कि verb का प्रयोग Transitivity या Intransitively हुआ है।

Auxiliary Verbs

Auxiliary Verbs को हम Primary Verbs एवं Modal Auxiliary Verbs में वर्गीकृत कर सकते हैं।

(1) Primary Auxiliary Verbs

Primary Auxiliary Verbs को तीन भागों में वर्गीकृत किया गया है :

- (1) **Verbs 'to be'** : Is, am, are, was, were
- (2) **Verbs 'to have'** : have, has, had
- (3) **Verbs 'to do'** : do, does, did

(2) Modal Auxiliary Verbs

Primary Auxiliary Verbs

'to be' form of Verbs

Auxiliary Verb 'To be' (Is/ Am/ Are/ Was/ Were) : Is /Am/ Are, तीनों verbs का प्रयोग Present Tense में तथा was/were का प्रयोग Past Tense में होता है। Is का प्रयोग Present Tense में singular number, third person 'Subject' के साथ होता है। Am का प्रयोग केवल 'I' के साथ होता है। Are/were का प्रयोग Plural Subject के साथ होता है। Was का प्रयोग Past Tense में Singular Subject के साथ होता है।

इन Auxiliaries का प्रयोग present/past continuous के Affirmative/ Negative /Interrogative वाक्यों में होता है। इसके लिये Tense का अध्याय देखें। इनका प्रयोग Active/Passive, Direct/Indirect Structures में भी होता है। इसके आगे सम्बन्धित अध्याय में बताया जायेगा।

Use of 'to be' form of Verbs in Various Sentence Structures

(1) Subject +is /am/are/was/were +noun/pronoun:

- (a) He is a boy.
- (b) She is a girl.
- (c) They are students.
- (d) We were friends.
- (e) I am a man.
- (f) You are a sportsman
- (g) It was me.
- (h) It is mine.
- (i) These shirts are not of my size.
- (j) They were partners.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Auxiliary verbs के साथ noun /pronoun का प्रयोग हुआ है।

(2) Wh word + is/am/are + subject :

- | | |
|--|----------------------------|
| (a) What is that? | (b) Who is that ? |
| (c) What age is he? | (d) What are apples today? |
| (What are apples 'means' what price are apples?) | |
| (e) What is your father? | (f) Who is he? |

इस तरह के वाक्यों में Wh words से प्रश्न किया गया है।

(3) Subject + is/am/are/was/were + adjective :

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| (a) She is asleep. | (b) He is ready. |
| (c) It was dark. | (d) Sita is a beauty. |
| (e) The students were exhausted. | (f) I was happy. |

इस तरह के वाक्यों में Auxiliary verbs (to be) के साथ adjective का प्रयोग होता है।

(4) Subject + is/am/are/was/were + preposition + adjective/possessive pronoun : Auxiliary 'to be' का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार के वाक्य बनाने में भी किया जाता है।

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| (a) Sita is in good health now. | (b) We are all fully tired. |
| (c) They were out of breath (breathless). | (d) At last he was at liberty (free). |
| (e) This gift is for you. | (f) I am quite well. |
| (g) Everything is in proper place. | (h) The car was in good condition. |

(5) Auxiliary 'to be' के बाद to infinitive का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है। ऐसे वाक्यों का structure निम्न होता है :**Subject + to be form verb + to infinitive :**

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| (a) He is to come on Sunday. | उसे रविवार को आना है। |
| (b) I am to complete this work. | मुझे यह कार्य पूरा करना है। |
| (c) They are to assemble in the hall. | उन्हें हाल में एकत्र होना है। |
| (d) They were to attend the party. | उन्हें पार्टी में उपस्थित होना था। |
| (e) He was to go to Jaipur. | उसे जयपुर जाना था। |
| (f) Sita was to come here. | सीता को यहाँ आना था। |
| (g) Who is to blame? | किसे दोष देना है? |
| (h) That house is to let. | वह मकान किराये पर देना है। |

It is a very important structure used in daily routine.

(6) There के साथ Auxiliary 'to be' का प्रयोग एक महत्वपूर्ण वाक्य संरचना है। जैसे :

There + is /am/are/was/were + subject

Or

There + is/am/are/was/were + subject + adverbial adjective

ये दोनों sentence structure का English writing एवं speaking में काफी प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :

- | | |
|--|---|
| (a) There is a cow. | वहाँ एक गाय है। |
| (b) There was a large crowd . | वहाँ बहुत भीड़ थी। |
| (c) There are three tables in the room. | कमरे में तीन मेज हैं। |
| (d) There were three persons. | वहाँ तीन आदमी थे। |
| (e) There is a girl waiting for you. | वहाँ एक लड़की तुम्हारा इन्तजार कर रही है। |
| (f) There are several hotels in this town. | इस कस्बे में कई होटल हैं। |

- (7) जब वाक्य का Subject एक Infinitive (+to) के रूप में होता है, तो निम्न Sentence structure का प्रयोग उचित लगता है। To meet you is nice की जगह It is nice to meet you लिखना एवं बोलना ज्यादा उचित है। जैसे :

It + be + adjective/noun + to infinitive :

- (a) It is so nice to walk here with you. (b) It was a pleasant surprise to talk with her.
(c) It is a mistake to ignore their advice. (d) It is so wonderful to swim here with you.

- (8) जब उक्त वाक्यों को How/what का प्रयोग करके exclamatory वाक्यों में परिवर्तन किया जाता है तो ऐसे वाक्यों का structure निम्न होता है :

How/What + adjective/noun + (it +be) + to infinitive

- (a) How nice to walk here with you! (b) What a pleasant surprise to talk with her!
(c) What a mistake to ignore their advice! (d) How wonderful to swim here with you!

- (9) जब वाक्य का Subject एक gerund या gerundial phrase होता है तो It का प्रयोग करते हुए निम्न Structure प्रयुक्त होता है :

It+(to be form) + adjective/noun + gerund

- (a) It is so nice walking here with you. (b) It is wonderful lying on the beach all day.
(c) It was worthwhile running that lady club last year.
(d) It's no good crying over spilt milk.

- (10) जब वाक्य में Clause, Subject के complement के रूप में प्रयुक्त हो, (अर्थात् बिना clause के subject को पूर्णता नहीं मिले), ऐसे वाक्यों का structure निम्न होता है :

Subject + to be form of verb+ clause (subject complement):

- (a) The trouble is (that) all hotels are shut. (b) Is this what your are searching for?
(c) This is where she works. (d) Everything was as we had left it.

Underline part, का subject complement, clause है।

- (11) जब वाक्य में clause एक subject की तरह प्रयुक्त हो तो सामान्यतया 'that' को omit किया जाता है एवं वाक्य का structure निम्न होता है :

It + to be form of verb + noun/adjective + clause (as subject)

- (a) It is time you started.
(b) It is doubtful whether he would be able to attend the function.
(c) It was a mystery how the thieves entered into the house.
(d) It is a good news you have found a job.

- (12) Auxiliary verb 'to be' का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार के वाक्य बनाने में भी किया जाता है :

Subject+is/am/are/was/were + adverbial adjunct :

- (a) He is here in the room. (b) The magazine you are looking for is here on the table.
(c) It's there is the library. (d) My house is near the post office.
(e) Was anything up there in the hall? (f) The index is on page 6.



Here/there को सामान्यतया वाक्य के अन्त में लिखते हैं लेकिन exclamatory वाक्यों में इन्हें वाक्य के शुरु में लिखा जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) Here is your friend! (b) Here comes the bus! (c) There she goes! (d) There he lives!

सभी underlined phrases, adverbial adjunct को व्यक्त करते हैं। adverbial adjunct का अर्थ adverb के साथ जुड़ा part of sentence है।

(13) जब वाक्य का subject ; for + noun /pronoun + to infinitive होता है तो ऐसे वाक्यों में auxiliary 'to be' का प्रयोग It के साथ निम्न structure में होता है :

It + to be + for + noun/pronoun + to infinitive :

- (a) It was very difficult for him to live in this cold region.
 (b) It was the rule for male and female to sit apart.
 (c) It is very easy for anyone to talk to her. (d) Is it easy for a rich girl to find a smart husband?

(14) Auxiliary 'were' का प्रयोग एक महत्वपूर्ण sentence structure निम्नलिखित है :

If + subject + were + complement :

- (a) If I were a king ! यदि मैं राजा होता! (काश मैं राजा होता।)
 (b) If I were young again! यदि मैं पुनः जवान हो सकता! (काश मैं पुनः जवान हो पाता।)
 (c) If she were a bird! यदि वह पक्षी होती! (काश वह पक्षी होती।)

इस तरह के वाक्यों को निम्न structure द्वारा भी समान अर्थ में लिखा जा सकता है:

Were + subject + complement :

- (a) Were I a king! (b) Were I young again!
 (c) Were she a bird! (d) Were we ministers!

उपरोक्त sentence structures के अतिरिक्त to be form of verbs, is/am/are/was/were का प्रयोग present एवं Past Tense में continuous form में Affirmative, Negative एवं Interrogative structure किया जाता है। Tense के अध्याय को ध्यानपूर्वक पढ़ें, इनका प्रयोग कहाँ एवं किस तरह किया जाता है समझ में आ जायेगा।

Auxiliary Verb 'to have' (Have/ Has/ Had)

Have / Has/ Had का प्रयोग Present, Past एवं Perfect Continuous Tenses में विभिन्न स्थितियों में किया जाता है। इसे आपको Tense के अध्याय में विस्तृत रूप से हर प्रकार के sentence structure (Affirmative, Negative, Interrogative एवं Interrogative Negative) में स्पष्ट किया गया है। Have/Has/Had के Tense में प्रयोग के अतिरिक्त अन्य use निम्न हैं :

(1) Have/Has/Had का प्रयोग, किसी वस्तु पर मालिकाना हक, स्वामित्व (Possession, ownership) व्यक्त करने हेतु निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है वाक्य का structure निम्न होता है :

Subject + have/has/had + noun Or Subject + have/has/had + got + noun

Have के साथ got का प्रयोग करने से वाक्य में उस वस्तु का महत्व बढ़ जाता है:

- (a) I have a car. (b) I have got a car.
 (c) He has a book. (d) He has got a book.
 (e) He had a beautiful house. (f) He had got several good opportunities.



(A) इस sentence structure का प्रयोग Relationship (सम्बन्ध) को व्यक्त करने हेतु भी किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) I have two sisters. (b) She has two sons.
 (c) I have five friends. (d) They have two brothers.
 (e) I had two sons. (f) He had a daughter.

(B) इस sentence structure द्वारा किसी व्यक्ति या वस्तु के पास उसके अनेक भागों के होने को भी व्यक्त किया जा सकता है। जैसे:

- (a) A man has two legs. (b) A cow has four legs.
 (c) The room has four walls. (d) A chair has four legs.
 (e) Ramesh has six fingers in his right hand. (f) This table has only three legs.

(C) Have/ had का प्रयोग take /receive /experience के अर्थ में भी निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है

- (a) I have my dinner at 9 P.M. (take)
 (b) I have my bath in the morning. (take)
 (c) I had no problem in searching his house. (experience)
 (d) I had many messages from my past employer. (receive)

- (2) **Have/Has/Had का प्रयोग कार्य की अनिवार्यता (Urgency), करने की बाध्यता (force or compulsion of doing) को भी व्यक्त करता है। ऐसे वाक्यों का structure निम्न होता है :**

Subject + have/has/had+ infinitive:

- | | |
|---|---|
| (a) He has to complete this work today. | उसे यह कार्य आज ही पूरा करना है। (अनिवार्यता) |
| (b) I have to go to Jaipur tomorrow. | मुझे कल जयपुर जाना है। (अनिवार्यता) |
| (c) I had to sell my house. | मुझे मकान बेचना पड़ा था। (बाध्यता) |
| (d) He had to suffer the loss. | उसे नुकसान उठाना पड़ा था। (बाध्यता) |
| (e) He will have to come here. | उसे यहाँ आना पड़ेगा। (बाध्यता) |
| (f) They will have to obey me. | उन्हें मेरी आज्ञा माननी पड़ेगी। (बाध्यता) |

इस तरह के वाक्य, अनिवार्यता, बाध्यता को स्पष्ट करते हैं। इस तरह के वाक्य दैनिक जीवन में बहुत प्रयोग में आते हैं। छात्रों को इस structure को अच्छी तरह समझ लेना चाहिए।

- (3) **Have/Has/Had का causative verb की तरह प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार होता है। Causative verb की तरह प्रयोग का अर्थ है, कर्ता स्वयं कार्य नहीं करता है। बल्कि वह कार्य होने का कारण (cause) है। अर्थात् वह दूसरों से कार्य करवाता है।**

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| (a) I had him punished for his negligence. | (b) I have a house built by her. |
| (c) Suresh has his thesis written by somebody. | (d) I had my book published. |

इस तरह के वाक्यों में get/made का भी प्रयोग किया जाता है। आगे 'causative verb' में यह बताया गया है।

- (4) **Have been/has been का निम्न प्रकार के structure में प्रयोग देखें :**

Subject + have/has been + noun (noun with preposition) :

- | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| (a) I have been a professor. | (b) He has been a banker. |
| (c) I have been to USA. | |

उपरोक्त वाक्य यह स्पष्ट करते हैं कि भूतकाल में वह व्यक्ति एक Professor, Banker रह चुका है लेकिन अब नहीं है।
I have been to USA.

इस वाक्य का अर्थ है कि मैं अमेरिका रह चुका हूँ लेकिन अब वहाँ नहीं हूँ।

See the difference between the following sentences :

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| (a) He has been to USA. | (b) He has gone to USA. |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|

दूसरे वाक्य का अर्थ है कि वह अमेरिका जा चुका है या तो वहाँ पहुँच चुका है या रास्ते में है।

- (5) **Verbs; expect, hope, wish, want etc. के साथ had का प्रयोग past perfect में, ऐसी past इच्छाओं को व्यक्त करता है जो पूर्ण नहीं हुई। जैसे:**

- | | |
|---|-------------------------|
| (a) I had expected to pass IAS. | (but I didn't pass) |
| (b) I had hoped to meet her in the party. | (but I didn't meet her) |

- (6) **Have/had के साथ had का प्रयोग देखने को मिलता है।**

- | | |
|---|--|
| (a) I have had my lunch. | (b) He has had her breakfast. |
| (c) She had had her breakfast early in the morning. | (d) He will have had his lunch by now. |

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में पहले have या had का प्रयोग present perfect या past perfect के अनुसार होता है तथा दूसरा had का प्रयोग verb की III form (जो present /past perfect में लगानी आवश्यक है) की तरह (have = take के लिये) हुआ है।

7. **Have /has/had के साथ negative एवं Interrogative वाक्य निम्न प्रकार से बनाये जा सकते हैं :**

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
(a) I have a pen.	I have no pen. I don't have a pen.	Have I a pen? Do I have a pen?
(b) She has a car.	She has no car. She doesn't have a car.	Has she a car? Does she have a car ?
(c) He had a house.	He hadn't a house. He did not have a house.	Had he a house? Did he have a house?

(8) **Have** का प्रयोग सामान्यतया **continuous form** में नहीं किया जाता है। लेकिन यदि **have** का अर्थ, **experience** या **enjoy** या **take** से हो तो इसका प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है :

- (a) They are having a party.
- (b) I am having a difficult time now a days.
- (c) She is having a nice time with her husband.

(9) **Use of had better :**

निम्न वाक्यों को देखें :

- (a) I had better talk him at once.
(This would be a good thing to do or the best thing to do.)
- (b) You had better not miss the train.
(It would be unwise to miss the train.)



'not' का प्रयोग यहाँ better के बाद हुआ है।

- (c) You had better go.
(It would be best for you to go. Or I advise you to go.)

Auxiliary Verb 'to do' (Do/Does/Did)

(1) **Do/does/did** का प्रयोग **negative** एवं **interrogative** वाक्यों में **present** एवं **past tense** में सामान्यतया किया जाता है। इस तरह का प्रयोग **tense** के अध्याय में विस्तार रूप से बताया गया है।

(2) **Do, Does, Did**, का प्रयोग **affirmative** वाक्यों में निम्न स्थितियों को व्यक्त करता है :

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (1) I do go to her. | मैं उसके पास जाता तो हूँ। |
| (2) She does come here. | वह यहाँ आती तो है। |
| (3) He did come yesterday. | वह यहाँ कल आया तो था। |
| (4) He does read. | वह पढ़ता तो है। |
| (5) He does learn his lessons well. | वह अपने पाठ याद करता तो है। |
| (6) She does take medicines daily. | वह रोजाना दवाएँ लेती तो है। |
| (7) She did take medicines daily. | वह रोजाना दवाएँ लेती तो थी। |

(3) निम्न वाक्यों में **do, does, did** का प्रयोग **emphasis** हेतु किया जाता है। देखें :

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| Have a cup of tea. | Do have a cup of tea. |
| Have a seat, please. | Do have a seat, please. |
| Write to me. | Do write to me. |

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में **Do** का प्रयोग वाक्यों को **Interrogative** नहीं बनाता है बल्कि यह वक्ता की अधिक विनम्रता, आग्रहयुक्त विनम्रता प्रदर्शित करता है।



The so-called emphatic do has many used in English :

- (1) To add emphasis to an entire sentence :
He does like eggs. He really does!
- (2) To add emphasis to an imperative :
Do come in. (actually softens the command)

- (3) To add emphasis to a frequency adverb :
 (a) He never did understand his mother.
 (b) She always does manage to hurt her mother's feelings.
- (4) To contradict a negative statement :
 (a) You didn't do your homework, did you? Oh, but I did finish it.
- (5) To ask a clarifying question about a previous negative statement
 Raju didn't take the purse. Then who did take the purse?
- (6) To indicate a strong concession :
 Although the Jack denied any wrong-doing, they did return some of the presents.

(4) **Do का प्रयोग adequacy, suitability बताने हेतु भी निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है :**

- (a) I haven't got a torch.
 Will a matchbox do? क्या माचिस उपयुक्त रहेगी?
 No a matchbox won't do. I am trying to find out the gas leak.
 (A match box will be unsuitable.)
- (b) Would ₹ 100/- do? (= be adequate) No it wouldn't. I need ₹ 1000.

(5) **To do with का प्रयोग concern के अर्थ में भी किया जा सकता है :**

- It has nothing to do with you. (It doesn't concern you.)
 It was nothing to do with me. (It didn't concern me.)

(6) **Forms of do are useful in expressing similarity in conjunction with 'so' and 'neither' :**

- (a) My wife hates eggs and so does my son.
 (b) My wife doesn't like eggs ; neither do I.

(7) **'Do' is also used to avoid the repetition of the verb :**

- (a) Shalini excelled in language studies; **so did** his brother.
 (b) Rahul studies as hard as his sister **does**.

One Principal Verb + Two Auxiliaries

कई वाक्यों में एक Principal Verb के साथ दो Auxiliaries का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) She neither can nor will help him.
 (b) He did not and should not talk to him.
 (c) He neither will nor can solve it.
 (d) They did not and will not help you.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में principal verb (help, talk, solve, help) एक ही है लेकिन auxiliaries दो हैं। यहाँ दोनों auxiliary verbs के साथ principal verb की एक ही अवस्था का ही प्रयोग किया गया है। जो दोनों auxiliaries के साथ अलग-अलग रूप से भी प्रयोग करें तो भी सही प्रयोग होगा। लेकिन निम्न वाक्यों को देखें :

- (a) He neither has talked nor will talk to me.
 (b) They have not helped and will not help you.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Principal verb का रूप दोनों auxiliaries के साथ बदला हुआ दिखाई दे रहा है। Has के साथ talked तथा will के साथ talk का ही प्रयोग होगा। इसी तरह दूसरे वाक्य में have के साथ helped तथा will के साथ help का ही प्रयोग सही है। यदि इन वाक्यों को निम्न प्रकार लिखा जाये तो गलत होगा।

- (a) He neither has nor will talk to me. *Incorrect*
 (b) They have not and will not help you. *Incorrect*

छात्रों को इस प्रकार की गलती से बचना चाहिए। यह एक महत्वपूर्ण बिन्दु है।

Causative Verbs

Causative verbs show that somebody/something is indirectly responsible for an action. The subject doesn't perform the action itself, but causes someone/something else to do it instead. For example :

Yesterday I had my hair cut.

1. I didn't cut my own hair, but I made someone else do it for me instead—I “caused” them to cut my hair.

Read the following sentences

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| (a) I made her sing a song. | (b) I made him polish my shoes. |
| (c) I got my clothes washed by him. | (d) I got my thesis written by him. |
2. इन वाक्यों में कर्ता स्वयं कार्य नहीं करता है। बल्कि वह अन्य से कार्य करवाता है। कार्य अन्य से करवाने हेतु जो verbs प्रयुक्त होती हैं वे causative verbs कहलाती हैं। इस तरह की verbs, get, make, have, keep etc हैं। जैसे :
- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| (a) I made him laugh. | (b) I made him write a letter. |
| (c) He made me polish his shoes. | (d) I kept her waiting. |
| (e) He keeps me away from the office. | (f) I shall make him complete the project today. |
3. Active voice में सामान्य रूप से make, keep का प्रयोग किया जाता है तथा Passive voice में have, get का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे :
- | | |
|---|--|
| (a) I got my shoes polished by him. | (b) I got my car repaired by the mechanic. |
| (c) I got my clothes washed by her. | (d) I had a song sung by her. |
| (e) I had the thesis written by him. | (f) I had my clothes washed by her. |
| (g) I shall get the project completed by him today. | |

सामान्यतया get का प्रयोग विनम्रता, अनुरोध को व्यक्त करता है एवं make, have का प्रयोग बाध्यता, दबाव, विवशता के सन्दर्भ में होता है।

LET

Let can be used as a causative verb.

Let means a person gives permission for another person to do it.

See the following examples :

- (a) I can let this car cool.
(b) Would you let me join your party?

Help

Help can also be used as a causative.

It means a person assists another person to do it.

See the following examples :

- (a) I helped her to pack the luggage.
(b) Would you help me deliver this box?

The most common error with causatives is using 'to' unnecessarily. For example :

- | | |
|--|------------------|
| (a) We made Jack to finish his supper. | <i>Incorrect</i> |
| We made Jack finish his supper. | <i>Correct</i> |
| (b) I let Jim to clean up the mess. | <i>Incorrect</i> |
| I let Jim clean up the mess. | <i>Correct</i> |

Linking Verbs or Notional Verbs

जब Auxiliary (helping) verbs किसी वाक्य में मुख्य verb को support नहीं करते हैं बल्कि मुख्य verb की तरह प्रयुक्त होते हैं तो उस स्थिति में इन्हें linking verb या Notional verbs कहा जाता है। जैसे :

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| (1) I <u>have</u> a book and a pencil. | (2) She <u>is</u> a beautiful girl. |
| (3) He <u>has</u> a table made of wood. | (4) You <u>do</u> your work now . |
| (5) She <u>was</u> sad. | (6) You <u>were</u> happy. |
| (7) He <u>is</u> my elder brother. | (8) He <u>is</u> a poor fellow. |

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में underlined verbs, Linking verbs या Notional Verbs हैं।



A linking verb connects a subject and its complement. Linking verbs sometimes called copulas. Linking verbs are often forms of the verb 'to be' as above. But are sometimes verbs related to the five senses (look, sound, smell, feel, taste) and sometimes verbs that somehow reflect a state of being (appear, seem, become, grow, turn, prove, remain). What follows the linking verb will be either a noun complement or an adjective complement : **See the following examples :**

- (a) This room smells bad. (b) I feel great. (c) A victory today seems unlikely.

A handful of verbs that reflect a change in state of being are sometimes called resulting copulas. **They, too, link a subject to predicate adjective.**

See the following sentences :

- (a) His face turned purple. (b) She became older.
(c) The dogs ran wild. (d) The milk has gone sour.

Inchoative Verbs

Inchoative Verbs जो किसी कार्य के प्रारम्भ होने को व्यक्त करती हैं, Inchoative verbs कहलाती हैं।

The term inchoative verb is used for a verb that denotes the beginning, development or final stage, of a change of condition.

—Guide to patterns and usage in English by AS Hornby

इस तरह की मुख्य Verbs हैं Get, Become, Grow etc.

My father is getting weaker.

He has become the richest man in the town.

It is growing dark.

It is getting dark.

इस तरह की अन्य verbs हैं : come, go, turn, fall, run, wear.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| (a) The paper of the book turn yellow. | (b) Will his dream come true? |
| (c) Ram soon fell asleep. | (d) The carpet is wearing thin. |
| (e) The supply of water is running low now-a-days. | |

(A) Get : Inchoative verb—get का प्रयोग सर्वाधिक किया जाता है। Get का प्रयोग अधिकांश Continuous form में होता है। Get का प्रयोग निम्न structure में Adjective की Positive एवं Comparative degree के साथ तथा Participles के साथ किया जाता है। जैसे :

- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| (a) Sugar is getting scarcer. | (b) It is getting dark. |
| (c) He is getting weaker. | (d) She is getting older. |
| (e) Ramesh often gets quarrelsome when he's been drinking. | |

Get का प्रयोग Continuous form में become के अर्थ में होता है। Past tense में (get का past got) यह किसी action की final stage को व्यक्त करता है।

- (f) He is getting to be (= becoming) a good pianist. (g) He got to be (become) my best friend.
(h) They got to words and then to blows (*i.e.*, began) arguing and then fighting.

Get का प्रयोग कई phrases जैसे : get rid of, get clear of, get out of में सामान्यतया प्रचलन में है।

(B) Become : Get की भाँति become का प्रयोग काफी प्रचलित है। Become का प्रयोग Adjective की Positive एवं Comparative degree के साथ तथा Participle के साथ निम्न sentence structure में किया जाता है :

- (a) How did you become acquainted with her? (b) He became suspicious.
(c) The leaves became red in autumn. (d) The child became pale and thin.

‘Become’ का प्रयोग Noun के साथ भी होता है :

- (a) On leaving school she became an actress. (b) He soon became the richest man in the town.
(c) Are you likely ever to become a principal.

(C) Grow : Grow का प्रयोग भी get एवं become की तरह Adjective की positive एवं comparative degree के साथ तथा participle के साथ निम्न sentence structure में किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) Time is growing short. (Time is getting short.)
(b) It is growing dark. (or It is getting dark or It is becoming dark.)
(c) The sea is growing calm.
(d) The child is growing thinner. (The child is getting thinner.)
(e) He is growing more and more like his father.

(D) Come : Come का प्रयोग adjective की positive एवं comparative degree के साथ तथा past participle की ‘un’ form (undone, unstitched, untied etc) के साथ किया जाता है। Past participle के साथ come का प्रयोग , unsatisfactory or undesirable position को बताता है। जैसे :

- (a) My dreams have come true. (b) The hinge has come loose.
(c) The knot came untied. (d) My shoe laces have come undone.
(e) The seam came unstitched.

Come का प्रयोग infinitive ‘to’ के साथ निम्न प्रकार होता है :

- (a) How did she come to hear the news. (b) When I came to know them better....
(c) Now-a-days the streets have come to be used as parking places for cars.
(d) She came to believe that.....

(E) Go : Go का प्रयोग adjective के साथ एक निश्चित परिवर्तन को व्यक्त करता है जैसे :

- (a) His hair has gone white. (b) He went mad.
(c) She is going bald. (d) Her cheeks went a very pretty pink.
(e) My telephone has gone dead. (f) The milk went sour.

‘Go’ का प्रयोग कुछ prepositional phrases जैसे : go to bed, go to pieces में सामान्यतया प्रचलन में है।

- (a) They started to go off the idea. (Go off—not like)
(b) He went to sleep. (fell asleep)
(c) She nearly went to pieces when her father died. (Fell to pieces—lost her control)

(F) Turn : Turn का प्रयोग adjective की positive एवं comparative degree के साथ निम्न structure में होता है :

- (a) The weather has turned much colder. (b) The oranges are turning red.
(c) The ink turns black when it dries.

Turn का प्रयोग nouns के साथ किया जाता है। ऐसी स्थिति में noun के साथ indefinite article का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) I believe you’ll never turn traitor.
(b) Is it wise for a great general to turn politician?
(c) When her servant left, she had to turn cook. (become cook for the household)

(G) Run : Run का प्रयोग Adjectives, dry, low एवं short के साथ किया जाता है जो कि परिवर्तन को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :

- (a) The well has run dry. (No water) (b) The cows are running dry. (not giving milk)
(c) Supplies are running short/low.

(H) **Fall** : का प्रयोग adjective की positive degree के साथ ही होता है। Comparative degree के साथ नहीं होता है। जैसे :

- (a) He fell sick / ill. (b) When do the taxes fall due ?
(c) The post of manager fell vacant. (d) She soon fell asleep.

Fall का प्रयोग prepositional phrases जैसे : fall out of favour, fall behind the time, fall to pieces में भी प्रचलन में है।

Modals

Modals, Auxiliary verbs होती हैं, ये verb की mood (अवस्था/भाव) को व्यक्त करती हैं। **Mood** या **modes** एक ही बात है। चूँकि ये verbs के भाव, क्रियाविधि को व्यक्त करते हैं अतः इन्हें **Modals** कहा जाता है।

Modals की विशेषताएँ :

- (1) इनका प्रयोग एक helping verb की तरह मुख्य क्रिया के साथ होता है।
- (2) Modals पर कर्ता के Number; singular या plural होने, या कर्ता के person (I, II, III, person) का कोई प्रभाव नहीं पड़ता है। जैसे :
(a) I can do it. (b) They can do it.
(c) He can do it. (d) You can do it.
कर्ता चाहे Singular है या plural, first person है या second or third person, modal 'can' का रूप अपरिवर्तित रहता है जबकि अन्य helping verb (is, am, are etc.) कर्ता number एवं person के अनुसार अलग-अलग लगती है।
- (3) Modals के साथ हमेशा verb की first form लगती है।
- (4) Ought एवं used के बाद 'to' का प्रयोग आवश्यक है।
- (5) कुछ modals जैसे need, dare, used का प्रयोग main verbs की तरह भी हो सकता है। अतः उन्हें marginal modals या semi-modals कहा जाता है।

Use of Modals

May/Might

May : इसका प्रयोग निम्न अवस्था हेतु किया जा सकता है :

- (1) अनुमति (permission) माँगने एवं अनुमति देने के लिए। जैसे :

- | | |
|--|-------------------|
| (a) May I go now? | Permission माँगना |
| Yes you may. | Permission देना |
| (b) May I borrow two books from the library? | Permission माँगना |
| You may borrow one book at a time. | Permission देना |
| (c) May I come in? | Permission माँगना |
| Yes you may. | Permission देना |

- (2) May का प्रयोग informal request हेतु किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) May I have the salt, please? (b) May I borrow your pen?

- (3) May का प्रयोग किसी घटना के घटित होने की अनिश्चितता, सम्भावना के साथ व्यक्त करता है एवं Might प्रयोग एक Remote possibility को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :

- | | |
|---|--------------------|
| (a) The sky is cloudy, it may rain today. | Possibility |
| (b) The sky is not cloudy but a change in weather is always possible it might rain today. | Remote possibility |
| (c) He has purchased hundred tickets of lottery, he may win a prize. | Possibility |
| (d) He might win the first prize. | Remote possibility |

इस तरह may का प्रयोग सम्भावना तथा might का प्रयोग दूरस्थ सम्भावना (Remote possibility) व्यक्त करता है।

- (4) May का प्रयोग good wishes, desires हेतु किया जात है। जैसे :
- (a) May God bless you ! (b) May you live long !
- (5) Purpose व्यक्त करने के लिए भी may/might का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है। जैसे :
- (a) We eat so that we may live.
(b) He works hard so that he may earn good livelihood.
(c) I play so that I may have good health. (d) They died so that we might live.
- (6) आश्चर्य व्यक्त करने एवं जानकारी हेतु भी may का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार होता है :
- (a) Who may be my friend here? (आश्चर्य)
(b) How old she may be? (जानकारी)
(c) When may we expect you? (जानकारी हेतु किया जाता है।)

Might

- (1) Might का request हेतु प्रयोग more politeness व्यक्त करता है। यह वक्ता की hesitation, आत्मविश्वास की कमी एवं request के स्वीकार न होने की स्थिति को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- (a) Might I borrow your golden necklace? (b) Might I talk to the P.M.?
(c) Might I borrow your car?
- (2) Might, may का past tense भी है। Might का प्रयोग present tense में भी हो सकता है। Direct से Indirect narration में परिवर्तन करते समय may को might में बदला जाता है।
- (a) He asked if he might come in. (b) He said that it might rain that day.
(b) Might I borrow your sofa set ?
- (3) May एवं might का perfect tense में प्रयोग :
- (a) He may have been wounded. (We do not know so far, but he is perhaps injured, possibility exists)
(b) He has not arrived so far. He may have taken a wrong way. (We don't know the actual position, but as he has not arrived so far, so the possibility is that he may have taken a wrong way.)
(c) He might have been wounded. [that was a possibility in the past. (but he was not wounded)] इसका अर्थ है कि वह घायल हो सकता था।
(d) You might have invited me to your wedding. (but you didn't invite.)
(e) She might have come, if we asked her. (but we didn't ask her.)

Perfect tense में may का प्रयोग, वर्तमान में एक सम्भावना को व्यक्त करता है। जबकि might का प्रयोग past में किसी घटना के घटित होने की संभावना (जो वास्तव में घटित नहीं हुई) को बताता है।

Can

- (1) Can का प्रश्न में प्रयोग, वक्ता का आश्चर्य (Astonishment), अधीरता (Impatience) क्रोध (Anger) को दर्शाता है जैसे :
- (a) What can he do? (b) What can she say, I wonder?
(c) Where can he go? (d) How can she resign?
- (2) Can का प्रयोग परिस्थितिजन्य सम्भावना (Circumstantial possibility) को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- (a) You can ski on the hills now-a-days. (As there is enough snow.)
(b) You can go there by road now. (As the road is ok now.)
- (3) Can का प्रयोग शारीरिक क्षमता (Physical capacity), योग्यता (Capability) मानसिक एवं ज्ञान के कारण योग्यता (Mental ability) को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- (a) I can solve this puzzle. (b) Can you lift this suitcase?
(c) He can read without glasses. (d) Can you speak French?

- ## May and Can

- ## Difference Between 'May' and 'Can'

- 'May' shows the authority given by someone else. 'Can' shows authority lying with the subject.*

Difference Between 'May NOT' and 'CAN NOT'

May not का प्रयोग **Improbability** (सम्भावना नहीं लेकिन है भी) को व्यक्त करता है। जबकि **cannot** का प्रयोग **असम्भावना (Impossibility)** को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :

- (a) The news may not be true. (may or may not be true.)
- (b) The news cannot be true. (There is no possibility of its coming out to be true.)
- (c) You may go from A to B, by changing train at C or you may go by way of D, but you cannot go direct. (As there is no direct route from A to B.)
- (d) You cannot go there by water. (As there is no water route.)

Can/Could

- (1) Can एवं Could दोनों का प्रयोग Request हेतु किया जा सकता है। Could से more politeness जाहिर होती है। जैसे :
- (a) Can you give me your umbrella?
 - (b) Could you lend me your sofa set?
 - (c) Could you please send me an application form? (Could you is a very good way of introducing a request. It is an alternative to would you ? And a little more polite.)

A Practical English Grammar —Thomson and Martin

- (2) Could का प्रयोग past ability को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- (a) When I was young, I could climb any tree.
 - (b) When Ram was young, he could swim across this river.
- (3) Could का प्रयोग वर्तमान में आवश्यकता (Necessity), क्षमता (ability) के सन्दर्भ में निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है :
- (a) Could you run the business by yourself ? (If it becomes necessary.)
 - (b) Could you get another job? (If you are terminated from here.)
- (4) Could का प्रयोग present perfect में एक ऐसी past possibility को व्यक्त करता है जो पूर्ण नहीं हुई। जैसे :
- (a) He could have caught the train, if he had hurried. (But he didn't catch the train.)
 - (b) He could have done it without much problem. (But he didn't do it.)
 - (c) He could have sent a message. (But he didn't send.)
- (5) Can के past tense के रूप में could का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :
- (a) Ramesh told me that he could lend me his umbrella.
 - (b) I did all that I could.
- (6) काल्पनिक (Unreal) conditions में could का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार होता है :
- (a) If I had more money, I could build a temple.
 - (b) If I had wings, I could fly to Himalayas.

Shall /Will

- (1) Traditional Grammar के अनुसार I/we (I person) के साथ Shall तथा II, III person के साथ will का प्रयोग मान्य है।
- (2) I person (I/we) के साथ जब will का प्रयोग तथा II and III person के साथ जब shall का प्रयोग किया जाता है तो वह determination, threat, warning, promise को व्यक्त करता है।
- आजकल will/shall के प्रयोग में उक्त अन्तर लगभग समाप्त हो गया है। लेकिन हमें Modals के संदर्भ में Traditional Grammar के अनुसार ही चलना है।

Shall

- (1) Shall का प्रयोग I person के साथ एक सामान्य future action को व्यक्त करता है। II एवं III person के साथ shall का प्रयोग Promise, Determination, threat, warning को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- | | |
|--|------------------------|
| (a) I shall go to market tomorrow. | <i>Future action</i> |
| (b) He shall pay you on Monday. | <i>Promise</i> |
| (c) He shall work hard to achieve success. | <i>Determination</i> |
| (d) Anyone find involved shall be punished. | <i>Warning, threat</i> |
| (e) You shall be transferred if you don't work properly. | <i>Warning, threat</i> |
| (f) We shall play hockey. | <i>Future action</i> |
- (2) II एवं III person के साथ shall का प्रयोग Determination, Compulsion, Bindings, एक force व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- (a) You shall go to meet him tomorrow. (You are instructed to go and meet him.)
 (b) She shall complete her work by tomorrow. (She has to complete her work by tomorrow.)
- (3) 'Shall not' का II एवं III person के साथ प्रयोग prohibition (निषेध) को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- (a) You shall not meet him.
 (b) Nobody shall write on the table.
 (c) She shall not attend the night party.
- (4) Shall का I person के साथ एक प्रश्न के रूप में प्रयोग, दूसरे की इच्छा जानने हेतु या अपनी सेवाएँ देने हेतु किया जाता है। जैसे :
- (a) Shall I open the door? (b) Shall I carry this box into the room for you?
 (c) Shall I thread the needle for you? (d) Shall I assist you?
- (5) Shall का III person के साथ प्रयोग या एक noun के साथ प्रयोग दूसरे की इच्छानुसार कार्य करने को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- (a) Shall Rahim wait for you? (Do you want him to wait for you?)
 (b) Shall the messenger wait outside? (Do you want the messenger to wait outside?)

Will

- (1) Will का प्रयोग II and III person के साथ सामान्य future action को बताता है, जबकि I person के साथ will का प्रयोग Threat, warning, promise, determination को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| (a) He will go tomorrow. | |
| (b) You will work here. | |
| (c) I will see you. | <i>Threat, warning</i> |
| (d) I will pay you on Monday. | <i>Promise</i> |
| (e) I will achieve my goal. | <i>Determination</i> |
| (f) I will never speak to him. | <i>Determination</i> |
- (2) Will का प्रयोग प्रश्न के रूप में formal request को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- (a) Will you close the door?
 (b) Will you bring me a glass of water?
- (3) 'Will' का प्रयोग सभी persons के साथ सम्भावना (probability) व्यक्त करता है। Will not (won't) का प्रयोग refusal (इन्कार) को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- (a) I won't go there. (b) He will not sanction your leave.
 (c) He will be in the park. (d) Today is 15th August schools will be closed.
- (4) Won't (will not) का प्रयोग जब प्रश्न के रूप में किया जाता है तो यह Invitation को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- (a) Won't you have a cup of tea? (b) Won't you meet her?
 (c) Won't you stay for a day?

- (5) Will का प्रयोग Instructions, command को भी व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| (a) All the cadets will attend the parade. | <i>Instructions, command</i> |
| (b) The girls will not wear the shorts. | <i>Instructions, command</i> |
| (c) You will deliver the welcome speech. | <i>Instructions, command</i> |
- (6) 'Will' का प्रयोग III person के साथ सामान्य आदत को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------|
| (a) The women will not keep mum. | <i>Habit</i> |
| (b) The girls will talk. | <i>Habit</i> |
| (c) He will smoke. | <i>Habit</i> |
| (d) The minister will come late. | <i>Habit</i> |

Should/Would

Should

- (1) Should का प्रयोग Duty (कर्तव्य), Responsibility (जिम्मेदारी), Advice (सलाह) Probability (सम्भावना) Expectation (आशा) Presumption (पूर्व अनुमान) Moral obligation (नैतिक दायित्व) Mild command (नम्र आदेश) व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- | | |
|--|-------------------------|
| (a) One should obey one's elders. | <i>Duty</i> |
| (b) You should obey your parents. | <i>Moral obligation</i> |
| (c) The rich should help the poor. | <i>Expectation</i> |
| (d) You should work hard. | <i>Advice</i> |
| (e) You should find her in the play-ground. | <i>Probability</i> |
| (f) You should take care of your health. | <i>Advice</i> |
| (g) You should take care of your brief case. | <i>Responsibility</i> |
| (h) You should complete your work everyday. | <i>Mild command</i> |
| (i) He should be reading now. | <i>Probability</i> |
| (j) He should be worried about me. | <i>Presumption</i> |
| (k) They should be anxious about us. | <i>Presumption</i> |
- (2) Conditional sentences में lest के साथ हमेशा should का प्रयोग किया जाता है। यह एक Important use है। जैसे :
- | | |
|---|--|
| (a) Move fast lest you should miss the bus. | जल्दी चलो कहीं तुम्हारी बस न छूट जाये। |
| (b) Work hard lest you should fail. | मेहनत, करो, कहीं ऐसा न हो कि तुम फेल हो जाओ। |
- Lest का अर्थ कहीं ऐसा न हो कि होता है।**
- (3) Should का प्रयोग purpose व्यक्त करने हेतु किया जाता है, तब वह may व्यक्त करते हुए किया जाता है, तब वह एवं might के अर्थ को समान रखता है। जैसे :
- | | |
|--|-----------------------|
| (a) I taught her so that she should pass. | (She might pass.) |
| (b) I scolded him so that he should work hard. | (He might work hard.) |
- (4) Should का Perfect Tense में प्रयोग इस तथ्य को स्पष्ट करता है कि जो कार्य जिस रूप में किया जाना चाहिये था, वह नहीं किया गया। जैसे :
- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| (a) He should have gone by morning bus. | (but he didn't go.) |
| (b) She should have informed me about the incident. | (but she didn't inform me.) |
| (c) Ramesh should have submitted the bills. | (but he didn't submit.) |

Would

- (1) Would का प्रयोग will की अपेक्षा अधिक polite request को बताता है। Request हेतु will की अपेक्षा would का प्रयोग अधिक मान्य है। Would का प्रयोग दूसरे की इच्छा (Willingness) जानने हेतु भी किया जाता है। जैसे :
- (a) Would you accompany me to the railway station? *Polite request*
 (b) Would you send me an application form? *Polite request*
 (c) Would you sing at the concert tomorrow? *Willingness query*
- (2) Would का प्रयोग likelihood, presumption, एवं probability को भी व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- (a) He would be in the field. *Likelihood*
 (b) She would be in the club at this time. *Probability*
 (c) She would be cooking now. *Likelihood*
 (d) She would be about 80 now. *Presumption*
- (3) Rather के साथ would का प्रयोग preference (प्राथमिकता) को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- (a) I would rather rest now.
 (b) I would rather study than see a movie.
 (c) I would rather play than rest now.
- (4) 'Wish' के साथ 'will' का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है। wish के साथ would का प्रयोग strong desire /willingness स्पष्ट करता है। जैसे :
- (a) I wish you would fight this election.
 (b) I wish you would support her fully.
 (c) I wish they would agree to this proposal.
- (5) Unreal (काल्पनिक) परिस्थितियों को व्यक्त करने हेतु भी would का प्रयोग conditional sentences में किया जाता है। जैसे :
- (a) If I had one crore rupees, I would donate fifty lacs to the trust.
 (b) If I had wings I would fly to Europe.
 (c) If I were the king, I would make you my chief adviser.
 (d) If a tiger came into the room, what would you do?
- (6) Conditional sentences में past perfect के sentences में would का प्रयोग किसी कार्य के past में न होने को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- (a) If he had come to me, I would have given him a job. (He didn't come.)
 यदि वह मेरे पास आता तो मैं उसे नौकरी दे देता।
 (b) If she had asked me, I would have helped her. (But she didn't ask me.)
 यदि वह मुझे कहती तो मैं उसकी सहायता करता।
- (7) Would — 'will' का past है, Direct से Indirect narration में परिवर्तन करते समय reporting verb past में होने पर will को would में बदलते हैं। जैसे :
- (a) He told me that he would go to Jaipur the next day.
 (b) He told me that she would not agree to the proposal.

Important

Should, could, would, might का प्रयोग past tense S/Jeb present tense दोनों में किया जाता है लेकिन shall, will, may, can का प्रयोग past tense में नहीं किया जाता है। कई बार परीक्षाओं में प्रश्न will/would, shall/should, may/might, can/could, के reference में आते हैं। इस बिन्दु का ध्यान रखकर answer लिखें।

Must

Must का प्रयोग present time एवं future time दोनों प्रकार के Actions हेतु किया जा सकता है। Must का कोई past tense नहीं होता है। Reported speech में direct से indirect में परिवर्तन करते समय कई स्थितियों में इसे 'had to' में भी परिवर्तित किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (1) Must का प्रयोग command, compulsion, order (निर्देश, दबाव, आदेश) का भाव दर्शाता है जैसे :
 - (a) Soldiers must obey orders without any question.
 - (b) All the girls must attend the function.
 - (c) You must do as you are told.
- (2) Must से moral duty/obligation भी व्यक्त होता है। जैसे :
 - (a) We must respect our elders.
 - (b) You must help your friends in need.
- (3) Must से necessity, urgency, circumstantial compulsion (जरूरत, आवश्यकता, परिस्थिति दबाव) भी व्यक्त होता है। जैसे :
 - (a) I must leave now otherwise I may miss the train.
 - (b) The electricity will be cut off at 9 A.M. so I must complete my work before.
- (4) 'Must not' का प्रयोग prohibition, Emphatic advice (निषेध एवं दबाव मुक्त सलाह) हेतु भी किया जाता है जैसे :
 - (a) Students must not resort to copying. *Prohibition*
 - (b) You must not miss the classes. *Emphatic advice*
 - (c) You must not talk to that fellow. *Prohibition*
 - (d) Visitors must not feed the animals. *Prohibition*
- (5) Must से strong probability/likelihood भी व्यक्त किया जाता है। जैसे :
 - (a) She must be eighty now.
 - (b) They have not arrived so far. They must have taken a wrong turning.
- (6) जब प्रश्न must से शुरू किया जाता है एवं उसका Answer यदि affirmative में हो तो must का प्रयोग किया जाता है, लेकिन यदि Answer, Negative में दिया जाये तो Needn't का प्रयोग करना चाहिए। जैसे :
 - (a) Must I attend the meeting ?
Yes, you must .
No, you needn't.
 - (b) Must I raise the issue in the board meeting?
Yes, you must.
No, you need not.
- (7) Must का perfect tense में प्रयोग भूतकाल में किसी कार्य के होने की प्रबल सम्भावना को व्यक्त करता है।
 - (a) He must have passed the test in first attempt.
 - (b) They must have reached there in time.

Need

Need का प्रयोग Ordinary verb एवं Modal Auxiliary verb दोनों की तरह किया जा सकता है। इसीलिए इसे **Semi-Modal** या **Marginal Modal** कहा जाता है। जैसे :

- (1) Modal के रूप में need का प्रयोग सामान्यतया Interrogative एवं Negative वाक्यों में किया जाता है।
 - (a) He need not talk to her.
 - (b) Need he talk to her?
 - (c) You needn't wear a tie.
 - (d) Need I wear a tie?
- (2) Perfect tense में needn't का प्रयोग ऐसे कार्य को व्यक्त करता है जो वास्तव में नहीं किया जाना ही उचित था। Needn't का अर्थ होता है। आवश्यक नहीं होना या जरूरत नहीं होना। जैसे :
 - (a) He needn't have written such a detailed essay. (The essay was to be written in 300 words only.)
 - (b) You needn't have bought such a costly gift. (waste of money)
 - (c) You needn't have written to him, as he phoned me shortly. (but you had written, thus wasting of time.)
 - (d) They needn't have left home at 8.00, the train doesn't arrive till 10.00 (So they will have two hours to wait.)

- (3) जब need से कोई प्रश्न किया जाता है एवं उसका Answer यदि affirmative में है तो must प्रयोग किया जाना चाहिए। Negative में Answer हेतु needn't का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :

Need I go there?

Yes, you must.

No, you needn't.

- (4) Principal verb की तरह need का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार से होता है :

(a) He needs my assistance.

(b) I need your help.

(c) He needed my help.

(d) He does not need my help.

(e) I do not need your advice in the matter.

(f) He did not need my assistance.

(g) Does he need my help?

(h) Do you need my help?

जब need का प्रयोग principal verb की तरह होता है तो सामान्यतया इसके Affirmative sentences में जरूरत या आवश्यकता (meaning) के सन्दर्भ में होता है। Need का principal verb की तरह प्रयोग जब Negative में या Interrogative में किया जाता है तो Do, Does, Did का प्रयोग Ordinary verb की तरह करते हैं।

Used to

इसका उच्चारण यूज्ड टू होता है। यह भी एक Marginal or Semi-Modal है। Used to का Negative form used not to होता है। Used to के negative हेतु didn't use to का भी प्रयोग किया जाता है। इसी तरह used to को Interrogative में प्रयोग करते समय used को Did + subject + use to + verb की तरह भी प्रयोग किया जा सकता है।

- (1) Used to का प्रयोग यह व्यक्त करता है कि भूतकाल में कोई कार्य आदतन किया जाता था लेकिन अब नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे:

(a) He used to drink daily.

(Now he does not drink.)

(b) I used to smoke one packet of cigarettes.

(Now I do not smoke.)

(c) He used to go for a walk.

(Now he does not go for a walk.)

- (2) Used to का वर्तमान से अभ्यस्त (accustomed) के सन्दर्भ में प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है :

(a) I am used to take tea in the morning .

मैं सुबह चाय पीने का अभ्यस्त हूँ।

(b) He is used to read the newspaper with morning tea.

वह सुबह चाय के साथ अखबार पढ़ने का आदी है।

(c) He would soon used to live at Mumbai.

(d) I am used to cooler's noise.

- (3) Used to का Negative एवं Interrogative में प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार किया जा सकता है :

(a) I used not to smoke daily.

Negative

Or I did not use to smoke earlier.

Negative

(b) He used to play chess at college.

Affirmative

He didn't use to play chess at college.

Negative

Used he to play chess at college ?

Interrogative

Did he use to play chess at college?

Interrogative

For making negative of such sentences we can use either 'used not to' or 'did not use to'. In interrogative sentences we can use either 'Used + subject + to' or 'Did + subject + use + to' structure as shown above.

Dare

Dare का प्रयोग Principal Verb एवं Modal verb दोनों प्रकार से होता है इसलिए dare को भी **Marginal modal or Semi modal** कहा जाता है।

Use of Dare as Modal

- (1) Dare का modal की तरह प्रयोग सामान्यतया Negative एवं Interrogative sentences में होता है जब इसका Modal की तरह प्रयोग होता है। तो इसके साथ 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। dare का अर्थ होता है, दुःसाहस करना, चुनौती देना। जैसे :
- (a) He dare not say like this. (b) I dare not talk to the chairman.
(c) Dare he not say like this ? (d) Dare I talk to the chairman?
(e) He dare not oppose you. (f) Dare he oppose you?
(g) Dare she complain against you? (h) She dare not complain against you.
- (2) How के साथ dare का प्रयोग वक्ता का आश्चर्य, गुस्सा एवं सदमा (surprise, anger or shock) व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- (a) How dare you speak like this ?
(b) How dare my wife leave without my permission?
(c) How dare you act in this manner?
(d) How dare he say so ?
- (3) Nobody, anybody, एवं somebody etc. के साथ जब dare का प्रयोग modal की तरह किया जाता है, तो इसके साथ 'to' का प्रयोग भी किया जा सकता है एवं नहीं भी किया जा सकता है। जैसे :
- (a) Nobody dare to comment like that. (b) Nobody dare comment like that.
(c) Somebody dare complain in the matter. (d) Somebody dare to complain in the matter.
- (4) Daresay का अर्थ होता है शायद, सम्भवतया (perhaps, it is expected, I expect) Daresay का प्रयोग I के साथ ही किया जाता है जैसे :
- (a) I daresay he will come. (b) I daresay she may agree.
(c) I dare say it will rain (d) I daresay they will be happy to get this news.
- Daresay को साथ-साथ एवं अलग-अलग (dare say) दोनों प्रकार से लिखा जा सकता है।**
- (5) Dare का प्रयोग जब Principal Verb की तरह किया जाता है तो इसके साथ 'to' का प्रयोग किया जाता है। Singular number, third person: subject के साथ 's' लगाया जाता है एवं Do, Does का प्रयोग Negative एवं Interrogative वाक्यों में किया जाता है। जैसे :
- (a) He dares to oppose you. (b) He does not dare to oppose you.
(c) Does he dare to oppose you? (d) Do you dare to speak against him?
(e) You do not dare to speak against him. (f) We do not dare to talk to the president.

Ought to

Ought के साथ हमेशा 'to' लगता है। **Ought to** एवं **should** का प्रयोग एवं अर्थ लगभग समान हैं।

- (1) Ought to का प्रयोग Advice (सलाह) moral obligation (नैतिक दायित्व), Duty (कर्तव्य) को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- (a) You ought to consult a physician. *Advice*
(b) We ought to respect our parents. *Moral duty*
(c) We ought to help our friends. *Moral obligation*
(d) You ought to follow the advice of the doctor. *Advice*
- (2) Ought के साथ not का प्रयोग किसी दायित्व को पूर्ण न करने के सन्दर्भ में किया जाता है या Advice के रूप में किया जाता है जैसे :
- (a) You ought not to treat your friends like this.
(b) Children ought not to watch T.V. so long.
(c) You ought not to talk to the elders in this manner.
(d) You ought not to smoke so much.

- (3) Ought to का perfect tense में प्रयोग व्यक्त करता है कि जो कार्य सम्पन्न होना चाहिए था वह कार्य नहीं किया गया। जैसे :
- (a) She ought to have invited him in the function. (But she didn't invite him.)
 - (b) He ought to have helped him in that matter. (But he didn't help him.)
 - (c) He ought to have opposed the move. (But he didn't oppose.)
 - (d) They ought to have come in time. (But they didn't come in time.)
 - (e) You ought to have stopped at the traffic light. (But you didn't stop.)
- (4) सामान्यतया ought to एवं should को समान अर्थ एवं समान प्रयोग के सन्दर्भ में एक जैसा माना जाता है लेकिन formal notices या अन्य कोई सूचना के लिए 'should' का प्रयोग किया जाता है, 'ought' का हीन जैसे :
- (a) Students should be prepared to donate the blood.
 - (b) Travellers should be in possession of the following documents.
 - (c) On hearing the alarm bell, the students should leave their rooms immediately.
- उपरोक्त वाक्यों में 'Ought to' का प्रयोग ही होगा।**
- (5) Ought to का प्रयोग Present, Past, Future tense में समान रूप से हो सकता है। जैसे :
- (a) I ought to talk to him today.
 - (b) I ought to talk to him tomorrow.
 - (c) I know I ought to talk to him.
 - (d) I know I ought to have talked to him.

Sentences Expressing Commands, Requests, Invitations, Advice, Suggestions and Wishes

(निर्देश, आदेश, प्रार्थना, निमंत्रण, सलाह, सुझाव एवं इच्छा व्यक्त करने वाले वाक्य)

Commands

Commands व्यक्त करने हेतु विभिन्न Sentence Structures का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है। जैसे :

(1) Imperative Sentence :

- (A) निम्न प्रकार के imperative वाक्य, निर्देश/आदेश व्यक्त करने हेतु प्रयुक्त होते हैं। जैसे :
- (a) Do your work. (b) Do hurry.
 - (c) Don't make a noise. (d) Complete your work.
 - (e) Eat your dinner, boys. (f) Be quite, Ritu.
- (B) Let से शुरू होने वाले Imperative Sentence भी Command को व्यक्त करते हैं। जैसे :
- (a) Let us go there.
 - (b) Let us not be alarmed by rumours.
 - (c) Let us work together in this emergency.
 - (d) Let them go by Jeep.
- (C) Third Person के साथ subject + Shall का मुख्य रूप से Written regulations में Command हेतु प्रयुक्त होता है जैसे :
- (a) Girls shall enter the names of their guests in the register. *Hostel Rules*
 - (b) The account of the society shall be operated jointly by the President and the treasurer. *Regulations of society*
 - (c) The President and the Secretary shall be elected every year. *Regulations of society*

(D) Subject + will का प्रयोग Third person के साथ Command हेतु निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है। 'will' का प्रयोग सामान्यतया तब होता है जब Command देने वाले व्यक्ति को यह विश्वास होता है कि उसकी आज्ञा का पालन होगा। अधिकांशतया 'will' का प्रयोग Written Instructions हेतु एक authority द्वारा किया जाता है। जैसे :

(a) The captain will report the arrival of his team to the Sports officer.

Principal

(b) The officers will attend the Republic Day function positively.

Secretary



आपस की बातचीत में II person के साथ भी will का प्रयोग command हेतु प्रयुक्त होता है।

(c) You will not mention my name to anybody.

(d) You will not disclose your identity to her.

(E) 'Must' का प्रयोग भी command हेतु किया जाता है। जैसे :

(a) You must not smoke at the public place.

(b) The police must assist the passengers in getting out of the drowned coaches.

(c) Dogs must be kept on leads in this area.

(F) Command हेतु 'to be' form of verb का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार किया जा सकता है :

(a) You are to report for further duties to the C.O.

(b) This railway crossing is to be manned at all times.

(c) You are to deposit entry fees first.

Requests

Requests हेतु may/might/can/could आदि का प्रयोग I/We (Ist person) के साथ निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है:

(A) **May/Might :**

(a) May I have a photocopy of this page?

(b) May I have your pen, please ?

(c) Might I use / borrow your sofa set, please?

(d) Might I talk to the Chairman ?

Might का प्रयोग more politeness व्यक्त करता है यह वक्ता की hesitation एवं आत्मविश्वास की कमी तथा Request को स्वीकार न होने जैसी स्थिति को व्यक्त करता है।

(B) **Can/Could :**

Can का प्रयोग Informal way में किया जा सकता है। जैसे :

(a) "Can I have an apple?" said the little boy.

(b) "Can I take one more chocolate ?" asked the baby.

Could का प्रयोग more politeness व्यक्त करता है।

(a) Could I have a cup of tea?

(b) Could I use your phone?

(c) Could I see Mr. Ram?

(C) Could का प्रयोग II person के साथ Request हेतु किया जा सकता है। जैसे :

(a) Could you please show me the way to the hospital?

(b) Could you lend me ₹ 500/- ?

"Could you is a very good way of introducing a request. It is an alternative to would you and a little more polite."

—A Practical English Grammar—Thomson and Martin.

(D) Will/Would

Will का प्रयोग formal request हेतु निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है :

- (a) Will you shut the door? (b) Will you bring a glass?

Would का प्रयोग 'will' की अपेक्षा अधिक Politeness को व्यक्त करता है। Request हेतु will की जगह would का प्रयोग अधिक उपयुक्त है। जैसे :

- (a) Would you deposit my application at the bank? (b) Would you accompany me to the hospital?
(c) Would you be kind enough to keep me informed? (d) Would you please count your amount ?

Invitations

Will/would : Will/would का प्रयोग Invitations हेतु निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) Will you have a cup of tea? (b) Would you like a cup of hot coffee?
(c) Won't you come in ? (d) Won't you have a cup of tea?
(e) Won't you have a coffee?



उक्त वाक्य प्रश्न की तरह प्रयुक्त नहीं हो रहे हैं बल्कि एक Invitation को व्यक्त करते हैं जबकि Do you want a cup of tea? एक Invitation नहीं है। इसी तरह निम्न वाक्य भी प्रश्न की तरह लगते हैं लेकिन Invitation को व्यक्त करते हैं।

Advices

(A) Should, Ought to एवं Must का प्रयोग Advices हेतु निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है :

- (a) You should improve your vocabulary. (b) You ought to clean your car.
(c) You must learn this lesson, it is important.

Should एवं Ought to का प्रयोग समान अर्थ में होता है जबकि Must का प्रयोग Emphatic advice या आवश्यकता को व्यक्त करता है।

(B) 'Had better' का प्रयोग भी सलाह हेतु निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है :

- (a) You had better change your dress. (b) You had better not wait any longer.
(c) He had better stop gambling now. (d) He had better stop taking drugs.

(C) If I were का प्रयोग should/would के साथ निम्न Structure में सलाह हेतु किया जाता है :

- (a) If I were you I would buy this house.

इसका अर्थ हुआ कि

He advised me to buy that house.

- (b) If I were you I would/should lodge an FIR against her.

इस वाक्य का अर्थ हुआ कि :

He advised me to lodge an FIR against her.

(D) Why don't you का प्रयोग भी सलाह या सुझाव हेतु प्रयुक्त किया जा सकता है :

- (a) Why don't you meet the Chairman?
(b) Why don't you take a leave?

इस तरह वाक्य वक्ता ही सलाह/सुझाव को व्यक्त करते हैं।

(E) It is time you + Past tense का प्रयोग भी सलाह/सुझाव हेतु प्रयुक्त किया जाता है :

It is time you bought a new shirt.

It is time you bought a new car.

इन वाक्यों का अर्थ हुआ कि

He said it was time I bought a new shirt/car.

ये वाक्य सलाह/सुझाव के रूप में व्यक्त हैं।

Suggestions

- (A) Suggestions सुझाव हेतु let का प्रयोग काफी प्रचलन में है :
- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (a) Let us clean the house. | (b) Let us play football. |
| (c) Let us go to temple. | (d) Let's not watch TV now. |
| (e) Let's not sleep so early. | |
- (B) Why not एवं Why don't का प्रयोग भी Suggestion हेतु निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है :
- | |
|---|
| (a) Why don't we discuss this point again? |
| (b) Why don't we meet tomorrow and settle the things? |
| (c) Why not meet and finalise the things? |
| (d) Why not inform everything to the parents? |
- (C) What about का प्रयोग भी Suggestion हेतु किया जा सकता है :
- | |
|--------------------------------------|
| (a) What about having a drink? |
| (b) What about meeting the chairman? |
- ये वाक्य सुझाव को व्यक्त करते हैं।

Wishes

- (A) 'Wishes' हेतु 'May' का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है :
- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| (a) May God grant you success ! | (b) May God bless you ! |
| (c) May you have a pleasant journey! | |
- (B) इसी प्रकार निम्न Sentences द्वारा भी Wishes को व्यक्त किया जाता है :
- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| (a) God save the queen! | (b) Long live the king! |
| (c) God bless you! | |
- (C) साधारणतया निम्न वाक्यों द्वारा भी 'wishes' को व्यक्त किया जाता है :
- | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------|
| (a) Well, have a pleasant stay ! | (b) Enjoy yourself ! |
| (c) Good Night, have a sound sleep ! | |
- (D) Verb, 'wish' का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार के Sentence Structure में किया जाता है। यदि 'Wish', present or future time के सन्दर्भ में की गई है तो 'wish' के साथ clause में Past tense का प्रयोग होगा। जैसे :
- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| I wish I knew how to operate it. | (but I don't know.) |
| I wish I knew her address. | (but I don't know her address.) |
| I wish I were rich. | (I am not rich.) |
- 'Wish' के साथ Clause में Past perfect tense का प्रयोग, अपूरित (Unfulfilled) इच्छा को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| I wish I had known how to operate it. | (I didn't know.) |
| I wish I could help you. | (I didn't help you.) |
| I wish I could pay your dues. | (I didn't pay your dues.) |
- (E) Exclamatory वाक्यों में If only का प्रयोग भी 'wish' को व्यक्त करता है। ध्यान करें 'that' का प्रयोग If only के बाद कभी नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे :
- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| If only the rain would stop! | (I wish the rain would stop!) |
| If only I knew her address! | |
| If only I had known her address! | |
- (F) 'Wish' का प्रयोग infinitive 'to' के साथ सामान्यतया निम्न Structure में होता है। जैसे :
- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| (a) Where do you wish me to stay? | (b) What do they wish me to cook? |
| (c) What do they wish/want me to do? | |

- (G) Wish का प्रयोग preposition 'for' के साथ निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है। यहाँ 'wish for' का प्रयोग "feel or express a desire for" के अर्थ में होता है। जैसे :
- (a) What do you wish for? said the Jenie.
 (b) I have everything that man can wish for.
 (c) He had everything that a man could wish for.
- (H) वाक्यों में if clause के साथ 'will' का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे :
- If he will come, I will accompany him. *Incorrect*
 If he comes, I will accompany him. *Correct*

Important Use of Will

लेकिन if clause के साथ will का प्रयोग दूसरे की willingness को जानने हेतु request हेतु या आग्रह (insistence) हेतु निम्न प्रकार किया जा सकता है :

If you will help me, we can finish by six. (If you will be so kind as to help me.)

If you'd help me (if you'd be so kind as to help me), we could finish by six.

यहाँ will एक auxiliary की तरह प्रयुक्त नहीं हुआ है बल्कि यह एक verb की तरह, दूसरे की willingness को जानने के लिए प्रयुक्त है।

"When will is not an auxiliary for the future tense but a verb indicating or asking about willingness, it may occur in an if clause."

Guide to Patterns and Usage in English by A.S Horndy. Page 232

इसी तरह Will एवं would का प्रयोग जब insist के अर्थ में होता है तब भी ये if clause के साथ प्रयुक्त हो सकते हैं जैसे :

(a) If you will bet (If you insist on betting) on horse races, you mustn't complain if you lose your money.

(b) If he would bet (If he insisted on betting) on horse races in spite of your warning, he deserved to lose his money.

- (I) Shall के साथ I/We का प्रयोग एक प्रश्न की तरह दूसरे व्यक्ति की इच्छा (wishes) जानने हेतु निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है। यह अपनी सेवाएँ देने हेतु एक offer की तरह भी प्रयुक्त होता है :

Shall I thread the needle for you?

Shall I iron your trousers?

Shall we put the box into the train for you?

Shall का प्रयोग third person के साथ जिस व्यक्ति से प्रश्न किया गया, उसकी इच्छा जानने हेतु निम्न प्रकार से किया जाता है :

(a) Shall he carry your luggage up stairs?

(Do you want him to do this?)

(b) Shall the messenger wait?

(Do you want him to wait?)

- (J) Shall की जगह be + to infinitive का प्रयोग भी 'wish' हेतु निम्न प्रकार किया जा सकता है :

Is the messenger to stay?

What is he to do next?

He asked me whether the taxi should wait.

(Whether I wanted the taxi to wait.)

- (K) I should/would like की अपेक्षा I'd like का प्रयोग इच्छा व्यक्त करने हेतु अधिक किया जाता है :

(a) I'd like to be present in the party.

(I wish I were present in the party.)

(b) I'd have liked to be present in the party.

(I wish I had been in the party.)



TEST YOURSELF Exercises

01

Translate the following sentences into English :

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) मेरे पास एक कैमरा है। | (2) मेरे एक भाई एवं दो बहिन हैं। |
| (3) मैं रात को 9 बजे खाना खाता हूँ। | (4) मुझे आज ही जयपुर जाना है। (अनिवार्यता) |
| (5) उसे यह कार्य आज ही पूरा करना है। (अनिवार्यता) | (6) सीता को ऑफिस जाना होगा। |
| (7) तुम्हें मेरी आज्ञा का पालन करना पड़ेगा। | (8) राम ने अपना पत्र किसी अन्य से लिखवाया। |
| (9) वह एक प्रोफेसर रह चुका है। | (10) वह अमेरिका में रह चुका है। |

02

Translate the following sentences into English :

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| (1) मैंने अपना नाश्ता ले लिया है। | (2) वह यहाँ आती तो है। |
| (3) वह दवाएँ लेता तो है। | (4) सीता गाना गाती तो है। |
| (5) इस कमरे में पाँच दीवारें हैं। | (6) हाथी के चार पाँव होते हैं। |
| (7) मेरे पास किताबें नहीं हैं। | (8) मैंने उसे हँसाया। |
| (9) उसने मुझसे अपने जूतों पर पॉलिश करवाई। | (10) राम कल जयपुर गया तो था। |
| (11) सुरेश रोजाना पढ़ाता तो था। | (12) कृपया एक कप चाय पीजिएगा। |
| (13) कृपया मुझे पत्र अवश्य लिखें। | (14) मैं उससे यह काम कराऊँगा। |
| (15) मैंने उससे घर की सफाई करवाई। | |

03

Correct the following sentences :

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) I possess two brothers. | (2) She possesses three sisters. |
| (3) I have not books. | (4) He has his book write by Ramesh. |
| (5) He was a earlier banker. | (6) She have been to London. |
| (7) I have have my lunch. | (8) I had have my work completed by him. |
| (9) Do has a cup of coffee? | (10) I do went to meet her. |
| (11) She does learns his lessons well. | (12) He did came here yesterday. |
| (13) I received a song sung by her. | (14) I found my clothes washed by him. |
| (15) She neither talked nor will speak to him. | |

Modals

04

Fill in the blanks with can, could, may, might :

- (1) you live long!
- (2) you read when you were five?
- (3) My father speak and write five languages.
- (4) You write on both sides of the paper.
- (5) We thought it rain.
- (6) He said he always come when called.
- (7) you ride your bicycle up to that hill?
- (8) I ran fast so that I catch the train.
- (9) He tried to solve the sum but he not.
- (10) Do not put off till tomorrow what you do today.

05

Fill in the blanks with shall, will, should, would :

- (1) you do me a favour?
- (2) When..... I see you again?
- (3) we go to the pictures today ?
- (4) His daughter be sixteen next month.
- (5) The wound not heal in spite of all the treatment he had.
- (6) that I were rich!
- (7) Had you worked hard, you..... have passed the examination.
- (8) As you sow, so you reap.
- (9) Those who live in glass houses not throw stones at others.
- (10) If you see him, give him my regards.

06

Fill in the blanks with appropriate forms of 'must, need, dare, ought to, used to' :

- (1) The door painting.
- (2) I smoking but I gave it up last year.
- (3) You come and have dinner with me.
- (4) He has lost your book and he not tell you.
- (5) You have written to him yesterday.
- (6) he wait any longer ?
- (7) He pay you the loan he owes you.
- (8) you speak rudely to your father?
- (9) I be a clerk, but now I am an officer.
- (10) What cannot be cured be endured.

07

Use appropriate modal to fill in the blanks :

- (1) you, please, stop talking?
- (2) You go only when you have finished your work.
- (3) you rather have tea or coffee?
- (4) I try again if you wish.
- (5) You not hurry, there is plenty of time.
- (6) I like you to do as I tell you.
- (7) If only they keep quiet for a moment.
- (8) God bless you!
- (9) You be mad to do this.
- (10) I learn English, and none shall stop me.
- (11) I prefer not to give any explanation.

08

Use appropriate modal to fill in the blanks :

- (1) One obey one's parents.
- (2) You go home whenever you like.
- (3) I like you to answer my question properly.
- (4) My father says we buy some sweets.
- (5) God give you courage to face it!
- (6) you like to have lunch now?
- (7) you please tell me where the Cinema House is?
- (8) It rain, it is so sultry.
- (9) The doctor said that the patient recover.
(The doctor was not very sure about it.)
- (10) You insist on being given your share. (Note the stress on the word 'insist'.)
- (11)God bless you!

09

Use appropriate modal to fill in the blank :

- (1) You have given me a helping hand. It was your moral duty.
- (2) I try to get you a job. I promise.
- (3) Arun is not a weak student. He is also not a very good student. He however, pass.
- (4) The student politely said to the teacher, "..... I have a word with you?"
- (5) You go now. (Permission)
- (6) you please close the door ? (A polite request in the form of a question)
- (7) It rain soon. (It is likely to happen)
- (8) You see a doctor at once. (It is an advice)
- (9) We hurry. We are very late.
- (10) I'm afraid I tell you that. It is a secret.

Question Appeared in Rajasthan Administrative Services Examinations in Previous Years

10

Identify the notion/concept expressed by each of the following sentences by choosing one of the three alternatives mentioned against each sentence :

- (1) No smoking ! (Advice/prohibition/threat)
- (2) I wish you'd be quiet. (Request /wish/suggestion)
- (3) I'm seeing the Principal this afternoon. (Likelihood/ determination/ arrangement)
- (4) You needn't have hurried. (Absence of necessity/ prohibition/ suggestion of hesitation)
- (5) It might rain before evening. (Possibility/ strong possibility/ remote possibility)

11

Restructure the following sentences using may, might, must, ought to, wish, only :

- (1) Candidates are required to answer at least five out of ten questions.
- (2) He was not careful enough.
- (3) Perhaps he was hurt.
- (4) Please make a little less noise. (You can make it less if you wish to.)
- (5) Please be quiet. (Request)

12

Fill in the blanks by supplying the appropriate modal :

- (1) You have watered the flowers, for it is going to rain.
- (2) If we had taken the other road we have arrived earlier.
- (3) The bank closes at two but the manager.... allow you to get in. (Remote possibility)
- (4) you please send me an application form ? (Request)
- (5) As John was the only person who visited us yesterday. It be he who left the main gate open. (Probability)
- (6) You read his latest book.
- (7) She speak three languages when she was twelve.
- (8) I see quite clearly what the children are doing in the garden.
- (9) He be at least sixty.
- (10) Your job be very demanding but at least it isn't boring.

13

Fill in the blanks by supplying the appropriate modals :

- (1) Usha run a hundred yard in ten seconds.
- (2) his soul rest in peace !
- (3) The baby is crying, he be hungry.
- (4) you tell me the way to the post-office, please ?
- (5) You keep your scooter locked.
- (6) I bring you a cup of coffee ?
- (7) When I was a boy. I walk forty miles in a day.
- (8) I have come to ask if Ram use your bicycle tomorrow.
- (9) you have another cup of tea ?
- (10) All of us die.
- (11) Drivers know that they stop when they come to the main road. (Obligation)
- (12) If you have a bad throat, you smoke. (Prohibition)

**SOLUTIONS****TEST YOURSELF Exercises****Solution TYE 01**

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) I have a camera. <i>Or</i> I have got a camera. | (2) I have one brother and two sisters. |
| (3) I have my dinner at 9 pm. | (4) I have to go to Jaipur today. |
| (5) He has to complete this work today. | (6) Sita will have to go to office. |
| (7) You will have to obey my orders. | (8) Ram got his letter written by some one else. |
| (9) He has been a professor. | (10) He has been to America. |

Solution TYE 02

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| (1) I have had my breakfast. | (2) She does come here. |
| (3) He does take medicines. | (4) Sita does sing a song. |
| (5) The room has five walls. | (6) The elephant has four legs. |
| (7) I have no books. | (8) I made him laugh. |
| (9) He made me polish his shoes. <i>Or</i>
He got his shoes polished by me. | |
| (10) Ram did go to Jaipur yesterday. | (11) Suresh did study daily. |
| (12) Do have a cup of tea. | (13) Do write me a letter. |
| (14) I shall get this work done by him. | |
| (15) I made him clean the house. <i>Or</i>
I got the house cleaned by him. | |

Solution TYE 03

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) I have two brothers. | (2) She has three sisters. |
| (3) I have no books. | (4) He has his book written by Ramesh. |
| (5) He has been a banker. | (6) She has been to London. |
| (7) I have had my lunch. | (8) I had had my work completed by him. |
| (9) Do have a cup of coffee | (10) I did go to meet her. |
| (11) She does learn her lessons well. | (12) He did come here yesterday. |
| (13) I had a song sung by her. | (14) I had my clothes washed by him. |
| (15) She neither has talked nor will speak to him. | |

Solution TYE 04

- | | | | | |
|------------|------------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| (1) May, | (2) Could, | (3) can, | (4) may, | (5) might |
| (6) could, | (7) Can, | (8) might | (9) could, | (10) can. |

Solution TYE 05

- | | | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|-------------|--------------|
| (1) Will, | (2) shall, | (3) Shall, | (4) will, | (5) would, |
| (6) Would, | (7) would, | (8) shall, | (9) should, | (10) should. |

Solution TYE 06

- | | | | | |
|------------|---------------|-----------|--------------|---------------|
| (1) needs, | (2) used to, | (3) must, | (4) dare, | (5) ought to, |
| (6) need, | (7) ought to, | (8) dare, | (9) used to, | (10) must. |

Solution TYE 07

- (1) Will you, please, stop talking?
- (2) You can (or should) go only when you have finished your work.
- (3) Would you rather have tea or coffee?
- (4) I will try again if you wish.
- (5) You need not hurry, there is plenty of time.
- (6) I should like you to do as I tell you.
- (7) If only they would keep quiet for a moment.
- (8) May God bless you!
- (9) You should be mad to do this.
- (10) I will learn English and none shall stop me.
- (11) I should prefer not to give any explanation.

Solution TYE 08

- (1) One should obey one's parents.
- (2) You may go home whenever you like.
- (3) I should like you to answer my question properly.
- (4) My father says we shall buy some sweets.
- (5) May God give you courage to face it!
- (6) Would you like to have lunch now?
- (7) Will you please tell me where the Cinema House is?
- (8) It may rain, it is so sultry.
- (9) The doctor said that the patient might recover.
- (10) You must insist on being given your share.
- (11) May God bless you!

Solution TYE 09

- (1) You should have given me a helping hand. It was your moral duty.
- (2) I will try to get you a job. I promise.
- (3) Arun is not a weak student. He is also not a very good student. He can however pass.
- (4) The student politely said to the teacher, "Could I have a word with you?"
- (5) You can go now.
- (6) Would you please close the door?
- (7) It may rain soon.
- (8) You should see a doctor at once.
- (9) We must hurry. We are very late.
- (10) I'm afraid I cannot tell you that. It is a secret.

Solution TYE 10

- (1) Prohibition,
- (2) Request
- (3) Arrangement,
- (4) Absence of necessity,
- (5) Remote possibility.

Solution TYE 11

- (1) Candidates must answer at least five out of the ten questions.
- (2) He ought to have been more careful.
- (3) He may have been hurt.
- (4) You might make a little less noise.
- (5) I wish you would be quiet.

Solution TYE 12

- (1) need not,
- (2) would,
- (3) might
- (4) Would,
- (5) might
- (6) should
- (7) could,
- (8) can,
- (9) must,
- (10) may.

Solution TYE 13

- (1) can,
- (2) May,
- (3) must
- (4) Will,
- (5) should/must,
- (6) Shall
- (7) could,
- (8) may,
- (9) Will,
- (10) will,
- (11) must,
- (12) must not.

SYNTAX : SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

Syntax का अर्थ होता है, Sentence Structure. अंग्रेजी में वाक्य संरचना के नियमों को जानना, शुद्ध अंग्रेजी लिखने हेतु आवश्यक है। Syntax के दो प्रमुख अंग हैं:

- (1) **Concord or Agreement** : By concord is meant formal agreement in person, number, gender or tenses between various parts of a sentence. अर्थात् वाक्य के विभिन्न भागों में सामंजस्य, Person, Number एवं Gender तथा Tense के अनुसार किन नियमों के अनुसार होता है, इसका अध्ययन Agreement or concord के अन्तर्गत किया जाता है।
- (2) **Order (Position)** : वाक्य के विभिन्न भागों को किस क्रम में रखा जाना है? Word Order (Position in a sentence) की चर्चा हम Preposition, Adverb, Conjunction etc में अलग-अलग विस्तृत रूप से करेंगे।

Subject-Verb Agreement

एक वाक्य में Verb एवं Subject के मध्य एक Agreement होता है जब Subject singular है तो verb भी singular लगेगी।

“The verb must agree with its subject in number and person.”

—Nesfield

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| (a) I <u>am</u> playing. | (b) They <u>are</u> playing. |
| (c) He <u>is</u> playing. | (d) We <u>are</u> playing. |

वाक्य संख्या (a) एवं (c) में Subject singular हैं अतः verb ‘am’, ‘is’ singular हैं तथा वाक्य संख्या (b) एवं (d) में subject plural हैं अतः verb ‘are’ plural है।



- (1) Verbs—Singular या Plural, Present Tense में ही होती है। सभी Verbs को Plural एवं Present Tense में माना जाता है। Verbs के साथ Present Tense में s या es लगाने से वह Singular बनती है।
- (2) To be form of Verbs; (is, am, are, was, were) ये Verbs, Singular में अलग-अलग Persons के साथ अलग-अलग Verb काम आती हैं, जैसे : I के साथ am, You के साथ are, He के साथ is जबकि Plural में इनका रूप एक ही रहता है। Present Tense में are तथा Past tense में were जैसे : We are, You are, They are एवं We were, You were, They were.
- (3) Shall, Will, Should एवं Would के साथ हमेशा Have का प्रयोग किया जाता है, इनके साथ कभी भी Has लगाने की गलती न करें।

Subject-Verb Agreement v/s Rules of Correct Use of Verbs

Exceptions to the Rule: The verb must agree with its subject in number and person.

Rule 1

कुछ वाक्य ऐसे होते हैं जिनमें Singular subject होते हुए भी Plural verb का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

(A) जब वाक्य में 'कल्पना' का भाव या असम्भव प्रायः शर्त का भाव प्रदर्शित होता है। जैसे:

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) I wish I <u>were</u> the Prime Minister. | (2) I wish I <u>were</u> a bird. |
| (3) <u>Were</u> he a king ! | (4) <u>Were</u> she an eagle, she would fly to me. |
| (5) She ordered as if she <u>were</u> my mother. | (6) If I <u>were</u> you, I would kill him. |

इन सब वाक्यों में एक कल्पना का भाव, एक असम्भव प्रायः शर्त का भाव प्रदर्शित हो रहा है। इस प्रकार के वाक्यों में 'were' का प्रयोग Singular subject के साथ होता है।

(B) जब वाक्यों में verbs; bless, save, help, live का प्रयोग इच्छा, अभिलाषा; (desire, wish) या आशीर्वाद का भाव प्रकट करता है तो singular subject के साथ भी bless, save, help, live, की plural form का प्रयोग करता है (अर्थात् blesses, saves, helps या lives की तरह इनका प्रयोग नहीं किया जा सकता है। जैसे:

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (1) God save the queen. | (2) God help you. |
| (3) Long live the king. | (4) God bless you with a son. |

(C) जबकि वाक्य में Dare एवं Need का प्रयोग Modals की तरह किया जाता है, तो Subject, Singular होने पर भी Dare एवं Need रहते हैं। (Dares या Needs नहीं होते हैं। इसके बारे में विस्तार से Modal verbs में बताया गया है।

नीचे लिखे वाक्यों पर ध्यान दें :

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) He need not to go there. (Needs नहीं होगा) | |
| (2) She dare not oppose your proposal. (Dares नहीं होगा) | |
| (3) Need he go there? | (4) One need not write anything to him. |
| (5) Dare she oppose you? | (6) He dare not speak like this. |

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में 'Dare' एवं 'Need' का प्रयोग Modal Auxiliary verb की तरह हुआ है। Generally in negative and interrogative sentences 'Dare' and 'Need' are used as Modals.

Rule 2

यदि दो अलग-अलग Noun, एक ही व्यक्ति या वस्तु के लिए प्रयुक्त हो तो Verb-Singular लगती है। जैसे:

- The poet and painter has died.
- The Project Director and Additional Collector is on tour.
- The clerk and counsellor was present in the meeting.

यहाँ poet, painter, Project, Director, Additional Collector एवं clerk, counsellor एक ही व्यक्ति के लिए प्रयुक्त हुए हैं। यह भी ध्यान रखें कि ऐसे वाक्यों में Article का प्रयोग Noun के साथ ही होता है।

Rule 3

जब दो Noun, जो लगभग एक-सा भाव या अर्थ रखते हैं, का प्रयोग एक-दूसरे का महत्त्व बढ़ाने हेतु किया जाता है, तो भी Verb singular लगती है। जैसे:

- The scheme and plan of my life differs from that of yours.
- His authority and command is indeed great.
- The benefit and advantage from this business is enormous.

Rule 4

दो Noun जो यद्यपि समानार्थक नहीं हैं, लेकिन एक Phrase की तरह प्रयुक्त होते हैं तो भी Verb-Singular लगती है।
Actually ये दो Noun एक ही idea को व्यक्त करते हैं। जैसे:

- (a) Bread and butter is a good breakfast. (b) Slow and steady wins the race.
(c) "Early to bed, early to rise" is a good habit. (d) Pen and ink is needed by me.

Rule 5

जब दो या अधिक singular nouns; or, either...or, neither ...nor से जोड़े गए हों तो Verb, singular लगती है।
जैसे:

- (a) No man or woman was present there. (b) Either Sita or Ram was present in the party.
(c) Neither he nor she is responsible for this loss.

Rule 6

जब दो या अधिक nouns अलग-अलग Number के हों (अर्थात् कोई Plural हो, कोई Singular हो) तो Plural number वाला Noun ही Verb के साथ लगाना चाहिए एवं Verb भी Plural ही लगती है। जैसे:

- (a) Neither the Principal nor the teachers were present in the function.
(b) Either Ramesh or his friends have stolen the watch.
(c) Ramesh or his friends are abusing him.

Rule 7

यदि दो या अधिक Subjects; Either ...or, Neither...nor, or से जुड़े हुए हों तथा different persons के हों तो Verb अपने पास वाले Person के अनुसार ही लगती है। जैसे:

- (a) Either you or I am to go there. (b) Neither he nor you are to attend them.
(c) You or Ramesh is responsible for the loss. (d) He or I am to go there .

Rule 8

जब एक Collective noun जैसे : Committee, Army, Crowd, Mob, Society, Assembly, Parliament, Council, Crew, Staff, Jury, Fleet, Majority इस तरह से प्रयुक्त होती है, जैसे एक Unit (इकाई) हो तो Verb Singular लगती है। जैसे:

- (a) The Parliament has passed the bill. (b) Army was deployed at the border.
(c) The fleet has reached the port. (d) The Assembly is in session now-a-days.
(e) The mob moves towards Parliament. (f) The jury has taken a unanimous decision.



लेकिन यदि collective noun एक Unit की तरह action नहीं लेती है, बल्कि वाक्य में divided प्रतीत होती हो या विभिन्न सदस्यों में एकमत नहीं हो तो plural verb लगाई जाती है।

- (a) The committee are divided over the proposal. (b) The jury are divided in opinion.
(c) The audience were getting bored.

Rule 9

यदि एक Plural noun एक निश्चित quantity या amount को एक Unit की तरह व्यक्त करता है, तो Verb singular लगती है। जैसे:

- (a) Five kilograms is not a heavy weight. (b) Hundred rupees is a big amount for him.
(c) Six miles is not a long distance.

लेकिन यदि इनसे Plurality का बोध होता है तो Verb plural लगेगी। जैसे:

- (a) Five years have passed. (b) Two thousand rupees were charged by him.

Rule 10

कुछ Nouns जो देखने में Plural लगते हैं, लेकिन अर्थ में Singular होते हैं ऐसे Noun के साथ Verb singular लगती है। ऐसे Nouns निम्नलिखित हैं:

Physics, Mathematics, Economics, News, Gallows, Billiards, Innings, Wages, Alms etc.

- (a) No news is good news.
- (b) Physics/Economics/Maths is a good subject.
- (c) Billiards is a game.
- (d) First innings was spoiled due to rain.

Rule 11

Each एवं Every के साथ जुड़े हुए singular noun (each एवं every के साथ हमेशा Singular noun ही आता है) के साथ Verb singular लगती है। जैसे:

- (a) Each boy and girl has to attend the function.
- (b) Every man, woman and child was happy to meet with the President.
- (c) Each minute and each second is precious.
- (d) Each male and every female was protesting against that law.

Rule 12

कुछ Noun जो दिखने में singular होते हैं, लेकिन अर्थ में Plural होते हैं, के साथ Plural verb ही प्रयोग में आती है, जैसे: Dozen, Hundred, Million, Cattle, People, Score, Thousand, Gentry, Police, Peasantry, Company, Alphabet, Progeny, Offspring, Clergy, Infantry etc.

- (a) The cattle are grazing in the field.
- (b) A score were saved by him.
- (c) Not less than a dozen were injured.
- (d) The people were fully satisfied.

Rule 13

जब दो Subjects, Not only....but also से जुड़े हों तो Verb अपने पास वाले subject के अनुसार लगाई जाती है। जैसे:

- (a) Not only the Principal but also the teachers were playing the match.
- (b) Not only the students but also the class teacher was also involved in the discussion.

Rule 14

जब एक Subject के साथ beside, as well as, and not, in addition to, like, with, together with जैसे जोड़ने वाले conjunctions से अन्य subject या कोई शब्द जुड़े हुए हों तो Verb वाक्य में पहले आने वाले subject के अनुसार लगती है। जैसे:

- (a) Ram and not his friends was present there.
- (b) The house with all its belongings was sold.
- (c) The President as well as the members has come.
- (d) The pigeon like other birds has wings.
- (e) Four questions in addition to the first question have to be answered.

Rule 15

जब किसी वाक्य में Other या another के बाद कोई Noun आए तो ध्यान रखें other के बाद Plural Noun एवं Plural Verb लगती है तथा another के बाद Singular Noun एवं Singular Verb का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे:

- (a) There are so many other hotels better than this.
- (b) There is another hotel near the Railway Station.

Rule 16

The poor, The rich, The disabled, The young, The old, The English, The French इत्यादि पूरी Class को व्यक्त करते हैं (The poor का अर्थ है सभी गरीब लोग, The rich का अर्थ होता है सभी धनी लोग) इनके साथ Plural verb का प्रयोग किया जाता है एवं The poors, The riches लिखना गलत है। जैसे:

- (a) The poor are trustworthy.
- (b) The rich are generally unkind to the poor.

Rule 17

जब दो Singular Subjects को and से जोड़ा जाता है, तो Verb Plural लगती है। जैसे:

(a) He and she were present in the function.

(b) Ram and Rahim are friends.

Rule 18

Hair (बाल) का प्रयोग singular में किया जाता है एवं Singular verb लगती है, लेकिन यदि बालों की Counting के हिसाब से इसका प्रयोग हो तो Verb plural लगेगा। जैसे:

(a) His hair is black.

(b) Five hairs of the horse are needed by him.

Rule 19

सामान्यतः All एवं Some के साथ यदि Countable noun आता है तो वह Noun भी Plural होगा एवं verb भी Plural लगाई जाएगी, लेकिन यदि All के साथ कोई Uncountable noun आता है तो Verb-Singular लगाई जाती है। जैसे :

(a) All the tigers are wild animals.

(b) All the money was taken away by the thief.

(c) Some animals are faithful.

(d) Some milk is needed.

लेकिन यदि all का प्रयोग वाक्य में एक Unit की तरह हो रहा है तो इसके साथ singular Verb लगाई जाएगी। जैसे:

(a) He informed the police all that happened last night.

(b) I would inform you all that was discussed in the meeting.

(उपरोक्त वाक्यों में all का प्रयोग एक Unit की तरह हो रहा है।)

Rule 20

यदि एक वाक्य में Most of के बाद Countable noun आता है तो ध्यान रखें वह Plural ही आएगा तथा उसके बाद Verb भी Plural ही लगेगी लेकिन Noun यदि Uncountable आता है तो Verb-Singular लगती है। जैसे:

(a) Most of the persons are dishonest.

(b) Most of apples are rotten.

(c) Most of the milk was impure.

(d) Most of the sugar was wet with water.

Rule 21

यदि वाक्य में Half of का प्रयोग किया जाता है तो ध्यान रखें Half of के बाद यदि Countable noun आता है, तो वह भी Plural ही होगी एवं verb भी Plural ही होगी। यदि Noun uncountable हो तो Verb-singular लगती है। जैसे:

(a) About half of the students were present there.

(b) He said that half of the hostlers were absent.

(c) Half of the milk was spoiled.

(d) Half of the land was cultivated and half was uncultivable.

Rule 22

There के बाद आने वाली Verb Plural या Singular होगी, इस तथ्य पर निर्भर होगी कि वाक्य का Subject Plural है या Singular । जैसे:

(a) There is a girl in the room.

(b) There are ten students in the class.

(c) There was a queen.

(d) There were several ministers in the party.

Rule 23

कुछ nouns, जैसे furniture, luggage, information, advice, work, knowledge, equipment, behaviour, scenery, traffic, fruit, electricity, music, progress, weather, nonsense, sense, etc. uncountable noun हैं इनको Pluralise नहीं किया जा सकता है अर्थात् furniture को furnitures लिखना या information को informations लिखना पूर्णतया गलत है। इनसे पहले article - a/an का प्रयोग भी नहीं किया जा सकता है एवं इनके साथ हमेशा Singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे:

(a) Work is worship.

(b) Knowledge is power.

(c) His behaviour was not proper.

(d) His advice in the matter is trustworthy.

(e) The scenery of Kashmir is indeed beautiful.

इस तरह की Nouns को Countable बनाने के लिए इनके साथ कुछ शब्द, जैसे: a piece of information, a piece of advice, a packet of furniture लगाया जा सकता है।

Rule 24

As follows (एक phrase) की जगह as follow लिखना गलत है। अंग्रेजी में as follows ही लिखा जाता है। जैसे:

- (a) The main points are as follows. (not as follow)
- (b) The details are as follows. (not as follow)

Rule 25

The following एवं the undersigned का प्रयोग यदि singular subject के लिए हुआ तो Verb-singular अन्यथा Verb plural लगेगा। जैसे:

- (a) The following are the new prices of the items.
- (b) Undersigned has taken a decision. S.K. Jain
- (c) We, the undersigned request the pleasure of your company. S.K. Jain and P.K. Jain
- (d) The following is the summary of the discussions held in the meeting.

Rule 26

कई वाक्यों में Singular noun का Repetition, preposition के बाद होता है ऐसे वाक्यों में Singular Verb लगती है। जैसे:

- (a) Man after man was coming there.
- (b) One month after another has passed.
- (c) Ship after ship is arriving regularly.
- (d) He begs from door to door.

Rule 27

कुछ Noun जो दिखने में भी Plural लगते हैं, दो भागों में बने होते हैं जैसे : Scissors, pants, trousers, binoculars, tongs, spectacles, shorts, breeches, shoes, scales, glasses, goggles etc. इनके साथ Plural verb का ही प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे:

- (a) My shoes are new.
 - (b) The scissors are blunt.
 - (c) His pants are tight.
 - (d) Her spectacles are beautiful.
- लेकिन यदि इनके साथ चम्पत का प्रयोग किया जाए तो verb-singular लगती है। जैसे:
- (a) Only a pair of shoes is required.
 - (b) A pair of scissors was purchased by me.

Rule 28

कुछ nouns ऐसे हैं, जो Singular एवं Plural दोनों forms में एक ही रूप में रहते हैं। इनके साथ Verb वाक्य के सन्दर्भ के अनुसार लगती है। ऐसे Noun हैं। जैसे: Sheep, fish, deer, pice etc.

- (a) A sheep is a beautiful animal.
- (b) Many sheep are grazing there.
- (c) I found a pice.
- (d) I found five pice.
- (e) There are many fishes in the pond. Incorrect
There are many fish in the pond. Correct

Rule 29

यदि किसी वाक्य में infinitive, gerund, phrase या कोई clause, subject का कार्य करता है, या subject की तरह प्रयोग में आता है, तो singular verb का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे:

- (1) Swimming is a good exercise. *Gerund*
- (2) To swim is good for you. *Infinitive*
- (3) How to start it is a big question. *Phrase*
- (4) That she is poor is known to me. *Clause*

Rule 30

More than one के साथ किसी **noun** का प्रयोग किया जाए तो **Verb-singular** लगेगी। जैसे:

- (a) More than one worker was absent. (b) More than one student was killed.



More than one यद्यपि एक *Plural* संख्या को व्यक्त करता है, लेकिन उसके साथ *singular verb* का ही प्रयोग किया जाता है। इस सम्बन्ध में Mr. Fowler ने *Modern English usage* में लिखा है।

More than one, though its sense is necessarily plural, is treated as a sort of compound of 'one', following its constructions and agrees with a singular noun and takes a singular verb—More than one workman was killed, not 'workmen' or 'were'.

—Fowler

Rule 31

कई वाक्यों में **more** का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार होता है :

- (1) More books than one have been purchased by her.
- (2) More girls than one were present in the party.
- (3) More students than one have attended the class.
- (4) More workmen than one are not traceable .

इस तरह के वाक्यों में **Plural verb** का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

Rule 32

कुछ वाक्यों में **noun** के बाद **Preposition** एवं फिर **noun** आता है। जैसे:

- (1) The quality of these goods is well known.
- (2) Financial help from all the countries was received.
- (3) The colour of this shirt is liked by all.
- (4) Your views on this matter are supported by all.
- (5) The details of the accident were not received by us so far.
- (6) The cost of production of steel goods is increasing.
- (7) Economic cooperation between India and Pakistan is increasing.
- (8) The smell of these flowers is liked by all.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों का Structure: noun + preposition + noun की तरह का है। ऐसे वाक्यों में verb, preposition से पहले आने वाले noun के अनुसार लगती है। वाक्य संख्या 5 एवं 5 के अतिरिक्त सभी वाक्यों में preposition से पहले आने वाला noun singular है। अतः verb singular लगाई गई है।



यदि वाक्य में एक से अधिक noun, preposition के साथ आए तो भी verb, सबसे पहले आने वाले preposition के पहले आने वाले noun के अनुसार लगाई जाती है। जैसे:

- (1) The manager's remarks in a newspaper about the conduct of the player were not appreciated by any one.....(1)
- (2) The cost of production of steel items is increasing everywhere.

Rule 33

जब वाक्य में इन phrases का प्रयोग होता है: a number of, lots of, a lot of, plenty of, a quarter of, part of, percent of, proportion of, none of, remainder of, two-third of, most of, some of, majority of, much of, many of, a good deal of, a great deal of, heaps of तो verb, of के बाद आने वाले noun के अनुसार लगाई जाती है। यदि of के बाद आने वाला noun plural है तो verb भी plural लगेगी। जैसे:

- (1) Plenty of sugar is required. (2) Plenty of chairs have been purchased.
- (3) A lot of books were destroyed in fire. (4) A lot of milk was sent there.



यदि *of* के बाद कोई *Countable noun* है तो वह *Plural* होगा एवं यदि *uncountable noun* है तो वह *singular* होगा। जैसे:

(a) A number of boys, Plenty of books.

(Boys and books are countables.)

(b) Plenty of milk, a lot of sugar.

(Milk and sugar are uncountables.)

इस तरह के अन्य वाक्य निम्न हैं :

(1) A large proportion of the northern army was British.

– H.G. Wells

(2) The rest of the prose of the age is too voluminous

– I. Evans

(3) Most of those who use it are probably unaware that assets is itself a singular.

– Fowler

(4) There were a number of such little reasons.

– A. Huxley

(5) The majority of writers never pass that stage.

– E. Pound

(6) Much of time is lost.

(7) Much of the sugar is impure. (Much of के बाद uncountable noun आता है।)

Rule 34

यदि वाक्य में A number या The number का प्रयोग हुआ है, तो ध्यान रखें the number के साथ हमेशा singular verb लगती है तथा A number के साथ हमेशा Plural verb लगती है।

The number का अर्थ होता है एक निश्चित संख्या, यह collective noun की तरह प्रयुक्त होता है एवं singular verb का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

A number का अर्थ होता है 'बहुत' (many) तो इसके साथ Plural verb ही प्रयोग में लाई जाएगी। जैसे:

(1) The number of students opted English in Administrative Services is generally small.

(2) The number of candidates appeared in SSC this year was very large.

(3) A number of English books are available in library.

(4) There were a number of students waiting for their turn.

Rule 35

None के साथ सामान्य रूप से Singular verb का प्रयोग सही माना जाता है, लेकिन Modern English में none के साथ Plural verb का भी प्रयोग किया जाने लगा है। इस सम्बन्ध में grammarians में काफी मतभेद हैं। जैसे:

(1) It is mistake to suppose that the pronoun 'none' is singular only and must at all costs be followed by singular verb.—Fowler

(2) 'None' was originally used only as singular but it has also acquired a plural meaning. —Nesfield

(3) 'None' is an abbreviated form of not one or no one and would therefore seem to be singular, but in its context it usually has a plural sense. —Vallins

इस तरह none का प्रयोग singular एवं plural दोनों ही स्थिति में किया जा सकता है।

नीचे लिखे वाक्यों पर ध्यान दें :

(1) None but the brave deserves the reward.

Singular

(2) None were injured.

Plural

(3) None of the minor characters were present on the day of rehearsal.

Plural

(4) None of his works shows his capabilities and his calibre.

Singular

Rule 36

(A) यदि किसी वाक्य का Subject, कोई Relative pronoun जैसे : who, which, that है, तो verb, इस Relative Pronoun के Antecedent के अनुसार लगती है। (Antecedent का अर्थ होता है पहले आने वाला) अतः Relative Pronoun के पहले आने वाला noun या pronoun यदि Singular है तो Verb भी Singular, यदि Plural हो तो Verb plural लगेगी या यह कहें कि Relative Pronoun से पूर्व आने वाला noun या pronoun ही verb को अनुशासित करता है।

जैसे:

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) It is I who have telephoned you. | (2) It is he who is responsible for this loss. |
| (3) The book that is here is mine. | (4) The books that are here are mine. |
| (5) The woman, who is in black saree, is my wife. | |
| (6) The women, who are standing there, are my sisters. | |

(B) कुछ वाक्य ऐसे होते हैं जिनमें **one of** के साथ **Relative Pronoun** भी आता है। जैसे:

- (1) He is one of those who do not attend the meeting.
 (2) It is one of the problems that hamper the work.

ऐसे वाक्यों में **one of** के बाद आने वाले **Noun** या **Pronoun** के अनुसार **Verb** लगाई जाती है। उपरोक्त दोनों वाक्यों में **one of** के बाद (**noun/pronoun**) **Those** एवं **problems** आए हैं अतः **verb**; **do** एवं **hamper** भी **Plural** है।

Rule 37

जब वाक्यों में '**Nothing but**' आता है तो **Verb** हमेशा **Singular** ही लगेगी चाहे **Nothing but** के बाद आने वाला **noun**; **singular** हो या **plural**। जैसे:

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| (1) Nothing but hill is seen. | (2) Nothing but birds is seen. |
| (3) Nothing but girls is there. | (4) Nothing but a student is there. |

Rule 38

यदि दो **Singular nouns** के पहले '**no**' का प्रयोग हो तो **verb-singular** लगती है। जैसे:

- (1) No boy and no girl was present in the party.
 (2) No man and no woman was swimming at that time.

Rule 39

जब अंकगणितीय **figures**, **and** से जोड़े जाते हैं, तो **verb-singular** भी हो सकती है और **plural** भी। जैसे:

- (1) Four and four is eight
 (2) Four and four are eight.

जब **Singular verb** का प्रयोग होता है तो इसका अर्थ है कि **and** से संयुक्त अंकों को एक **Unitary Concept** माना गया है। जब **Plural Verb** का प्रयोग होता है, तो इन्हें अलग-अलग माना गया है, इस सम्बन्ध में **Norman Lewis** के निम्न कथन पर ध्यान दें:

Five and Five is ten : Right—But don't jump to the conclusion that 'five and five are ten' is wrong both verbs are equally accepted

—*Norman Lewis*

साधारणतया **Singular verb** का प्रयोग उचित रहता है।

Rule 40

कई वाक्य ऐसे होते हैं जिनमें '**as**' का प्रयोग करते समय **as** के बाद **subject** का प्रयोग नहीं करते हैं (या **subject understood** होता है।) ऐसे वाक्यों में **verb** का प्रयोग वाक्य के अर्थ के अनुसार ही करना चाहिए अर्थात् यदि अर्थ के अनुसार **subject-singular** है तो **verb-singular** एवं यदि अर्थ के अनुसार **subject-plural** है तो **verb-plural** लगेगी। जैसे:

- (1) There were not so many workers as were required.
 (2) There were not so many workers as was expected.

पहले वाक्य में **As** के बाद '**they**' **subject understood** है। अतः '**were**' **Plural verb** का प्रयोग हुआ है। दूसरे वाक्य में **as** के बाद **subject** '**it**' **understood** है। अतः '**was**' **singular verb** का प्रयोग किया गया है।

Rule 41

कई वाक्यों में 'as' के समान ही **than** के बाद Subject, understood होता है। यदि यह subject-singular है तो verb, singular एवं यदि यह subject, plural है तो plural verb का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे:

- (1) There were more casualties than was reported.
(2) There were more books than were required.

पहले वाक्यों में **than** के बाद 'it' understood होता है एवं दूसरे वाक्य में **than** के बाद 'they' understood है। अतः पहले वाक्य में 'was' तथा दूसरे वाक्य में 'were' का प्रयोग किया गया है।

Rule 42

Everyone, Everybody, Nobody, Somebody, No one, Each one, Someone के साथ Singular Verb लगती है। जैसे

- (1) Everyone was happy to get this news. (2) Somebody is coming here.
(3) Each one was given a gift. (4) Someone is there in the hall.

Rule 43

Either of, Each of, Neither of के साथ भी singular verb का प्रयोग होता है। ध्यान रखें, **Either of, Each of** एवं **Neither of** के बाद Subject (noun) plural आता है। जैसे:

- (a) Each of the students was given a gift. (b) Either of the magazines is useful.
(c) Neither of the books is cheap. (d) Neither of the girls was beautiful.

Rule 44

किसी वाक्य में Verb उसके Subject के अनुसार लगती है न कि Complement के अनुसार। नीचे के वाक्यों से यह बात स्पष्ट हो जाती है। जैसे:

- (1) Our only guide were the stars. *Incorrect*
Our only guide was the stars. *Correct*
(2) The stars was our only guide. *Incorrect*
The stars were our only guide. *Correct*

Rule 45

कुछ verbs के बाद 'as' अवश्य लगता है। ये verbs हैं : regard, describe, represent, portray, depict, mention, define, treat. जैसे:

- (a) You ought to have regarded him as your brother.
(b) He was described by his wife as the most harmless man.
(c) He portrayed him as a typical country farmer.
(d) Someone has defined genius as an infinite capacity for learning.
(e) You should have treated him as your brother.

Rule 46

कुछ Verbs के बाद 'as' नहीं लगता है। ये verbs हैं: name, call, term, think, consider, nominate, appoint.

- (a) The Chairman nominated Hari secretary of the society.
(b) Ram called him a fool, a rogue and a crook. (c) Ram calls his wife 'Situ'.
(d) I think him an intelligent man. (e) I consider it a badly managed organisation.



Note : Verb 'act' एवं 'pass' के साथ 'as' का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार के sentences में होता है
(f) He acted as Principal. (g) He passed as a gentleman.

Inversion

What is 'Inversion'?

Affirmative वाक्यों का Structure सामान्यतया निम्न प्रकार का होता है

Subject + Verb +

Verb का प्रयोग Subject के बाद किया जाता है।

Interrogative वाक्यों में सामान्यतया Verb का प्रयोग Subject से पूर्व निम्न प्रकार होता है

Verb + Subject +

Interrogative वाक्यों के अतिरिक्त बहुत से Adverbs एवं Adverbial expressions का प्रयोग जब clause के प्रारम्भ में होता है तो Verb, Subject के पहले आती है। वाक्यों में Verb का Subject के पहले आना Inversion कहलाता है।

Inversion of the Verb : "Certain adverbs and adverb phrases, most with a restrictive or negative sense, can for emphasis be placed first in a sentence or clause and are then followed by the inverted (i.e. interrogative) form of the verb."
—Thomson and Martinet.

Inversion दो प्रकार का होता है:

- (1) जब **Auxiliary Verb** का प्रयोग तो Subject के पहले किया जाता है, लेकिन मुख्य Verb (Main Verb) का प्रयोग Subject के बाद ही होता है। जैसे:

Never does he go to temple.

Hardly does he come here.

उक्त वाक्यों में Auxiliary 'does' का प्रयोग Subject से पूर्व तथा Main Verbs—go एवं come का प्रयोग Subject के बाद किया गया है।

- (2) जब मुख्य Verb या Auxiliary + मुख्य Verb का प्रयोग Subject के पहले किया जाता है। जैसे:

(a) Round the corner went Jacob.

Main verb + Subject

(b) Under a tree was sitting an old lady.

Auxiliary + Main Verb + Subject

Examples of Inversion

- (1) **Hardly, rarely, scarcely, seldom, never** का प्रयोग जब वाक्य को शुरू करने के लिए होता है। जैसे:

(a) Hardly does she go to church.

(b) Seldom had I seen such a healthy baby.

(c) Never does she go to temple.

(d) Scarcely ever did they manage to meet the deadline.

(e) Rarely is she absent from duty.

- (2) **Not only but also** का प्रयोग जब Verbs के पूर्व किया जाता है। जैसे:

(a) Not only did she watch TV but she also cooked meal.

(b) Not only does he rob her but he also smashes everything.

- (3) **No sooner** का प्रयोग जब वाक्य को शुरू करने हेतु किया जाता है। जैसे:

(a) No sooner had she seen her husband than she hugged him.

(b) No sooner did he see the dead body of his wife than he burst into tears.

- (4) **No.....** से बने expressions जैसे: Under no circumstances, In no way, On no account, On no condition, At no time के साथ Inversion का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे:

(a) Under no circumstances shall I accept this proposal.

(b) On no condition will she sell the house. (c) In no way will I forgive her.

(d) On no account must this button be pushed.

- (5) **Only** के साथ प्रयुक्त Adverbial expressions जैसे : Only yesterday, only the day before yesterday, Only last month, Only last fortnight, Only after a month/ year, Only then, Only in this way, Only when, Only by doing this thing, Only in a few schools/colleges/countries/continents etc. के साथ Inversion का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

जैसे:

- (a) Only yesterday did he buy that car.
- (b) Only by taking risk did he save the life of the minister.
- (c) Only by accepting the condition, did he join this job.
- (d) Only by shouting was she able to make herself heard.

(6) Adverbial expressions showing place (स्थान) के साथ Inversion लगता है। ऐसे Expression : Outside the gate, under the table, In the valley, Along the border, Round the corner, On a hill etc. हैं: जैसे:

- (a) In the valley did I see a strange man.
- (b) On a hill did he find a new revolver.
- (c) Outside the gate did he notice something moving.

इसी तरह के अन्य Adverbial expression निम्न हैं, जिनके साथ Inversion लगता है, लेकिन do/did का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है। Under a tree, On the bed, ten/five miles beyond the school/college/city, Nowhere else etc.

- (a) Under a tree was sleeping an old lady.
- (b) On the bed was sitting her friend.
- (c) Five miles beyond the city was a mysterious palace.

(7) Here/There/Away/Out/Up/Indoor/Outdoors/In/Down/ इत्यादि से शुरू होने वाले वाक्यों में Inversion का प्रयोग है। जैसे:

- (a) Down fell a dozen apples.
- (b) In came the child weeping.
- (c) Here comes the train.
- (d) There goes Sita.
- (e) Away went Ram.



जब इस तरह के वाक्यों में Subject के रूप में pronoun आए तो Verb, उस Subject के बाद प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे:

- (a) There she goes.
- (b) Away he went.
- (c) Here she comes.

(8) So के साथ Adverb of manner का प्रयोग वाक्य के शुरू में होने पर भी Inversion लगता है। जैसे:

- (a) So well did he organise the function that everyone started praising him.
- (b) So absurdly did he speak that everyone was offended.
- (c) So suspicious did he become that he couldn't talk to her properly.

(9) To such a degree/To such an extent/ To such a point/To such a length से जब वाक्य शुरू होता है, तो Inversion का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे:

- (a) To such an extent he made the investment that people started trusting him.
- (b) To such a degree they made a noise that Principal had to call the police.

(10) निम्न प्रकार के वाक्यों में भी Inversion का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे:

- (a) Were I a bird! (If I were a bird एवं were I a bird का एक ही अर्थ है)
- (b) Had he come to me, I would have helped him.
(It he had come to me, I would have helped him
वाक्य (b) को इस तरह भी लिखा जा सकता है)
- (c) Soniya went to church, so did I.
(यहाँ so did I का अर्थ है I went there too)
- (d) She did not visit the Agra, neither did I. (e) He did not go there, nor did I.



ध्यान रखें so, Neither, Nor के साथ Inversion का प्रयोग सामान्यतया उस स्थिति में होता है जब इनके साथ Subject उसी कार्य को करता है जैसा दूसरे ने किया है। (To show the similarity in action) जैसा उक्त वाक्यों (c),(d),(e) से स्पष्ट है।

- 

She एवं he, pronoun हैं।



TEST YOURSELF Exercises

Read the following sentences to find whether there is any error in any part:

- ## Verbs

Fill in the blanks with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets:

- (1) He (live) in Kolkata for five years. (2) At the moment he (play) in the park.
(3) I (wish) I knew the girl's name. (4) She (take) a bath when the telephone rang.

- (5) I already (tell) you that you should work hard.
- (6) Ram always (remember) that honesty is the best policy.
- (7) Ramesh (leave) his house before I called on him.
- (8) They always (believe) that love is stronger than hate.
- (9) She told me that her mother (go) to the doctor half an hour before.
- (10) I (wash) my hands when he came.
- (11) I already (tell) you what to do under these circumstances.
- (12) It is high time you (start) working with full zeal.

03

Fill in the blanks with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets:

- (1) Ramesh (pass) the post-office on his way to office every day.
- (2) He (watch) television when Ramesh came in.
- (3) He (tell) me that she had never met you.
- (4) He (read) since 2 O'clock.
- (5) If you promise to work hard I (allow) you to go on leave.
- (6) The doctor (arrive) just before Sita went away.
- (7) The sun (shine) by day and the moon by night.
- (8) She (attend) college since May last.
- (9) You (receive) your award tomorrow.
- (10) I (have) dinner last night at 9 O'clock.
- (11) I (write) a letter before I went to play.
- (12) He (read) the newspaper when Ram came in.

04

Fill in the blanks with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets:

- (a) A farmer was very fond of the two animals. When he (come) out for a stroll, these two creatures (amuse) him. One day as the farmer (walk) in the garden, these pets (run) away from him. He (search) for them but of no avail.
- (b) He (be) a black man. One winter morning he (look) out of his window as he (dress). He (not hate) the winter now, for he (know) that it (be) merely the spring asleep and that the flowers (rest).

05

Fill in the blanks with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets.

- (1) When they left this morning, the sun..... (shine)
- (2) The Chairman cannot see anybody as he some letters. (dictate)
- (3) If it is possible, weto Chennai tomorrow. (go)
- (4) Ram from fever since yesterday night. (suffer)
- (5) We nothing to eat for three days. (have)
- (6) He said that he for a walk today in the evening. (go)
- (7) If I were you I to accept the bribe! (refuse)
- (8) We at the news of his defeat. (surprise)
- (9) He..... while stealing the jewels. (catch)
- (10) The children at the prospect of going for a picnic. (please)
- (11) She of herself. (ashamed)
- (12) Ravi Shankar by the Music Society. (honour)
- (13) you playing cricket? (like)
- (14) the doctor to see you yesterday? (come)
- (15) it all the year round here? (rain)

06

Fill in the blanks with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets:

- | | |
|---|---------------|
| (1) She saw that the clock..... | (to stop) |
| (2) He replied that he better. | (to feel) |
| (3) Ramesh so hard that he is certain to succeed. | (to work) |
| (4) He speaks as one who | (to know) |
| (5) So long as the rain ... I stayed in office. | (to continue) |
| (6) If I go to market I a pen for you. | (to bring) |
| (7) A child always.... magazines about ghosts. | (to enjoy) |
| (8) He to Delhi last week. | (to go) |
| (9) They in Jaipur for three years. | (to stay) |
| (10) They..... here for the last two hours. | (to wait) |
| (11) I to her day before yesterday. | (to write) |
| (12) These students cricket next Sunday. | (to play) |
| (13) It when they went out. | (to rain) |
| (14) Cow grass. | (to eat) |
| (15) We to the pictures yesterday. | (go) |

07

Fill in the blanks with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets:

- | | |
|---|---------|
| (1) She letters yesterday. | (write) |
| (2) The construction of new hotel stopped. | (be) |
| (3) I English for three years now. | (study) |
| (4) I her for a very long time. | (know) |
| (5) He..... away last week. | (go) |
| (6) We..... tennis together last June. | (play) |
| (7) I enjoy a good social film. | (watch) |
| (8) The little boy admitted that he the glass. | (break) |
| (9) She forgot the door when she went to market. | (lock) |
| (10) As she there, someone bumped into her. | (wait) |
| (11) He will unlock the door when he here. | (get) |
| (12) He would have done it if you him so. | (tell) |
| (13) He is used to on a hard bed so he does not mind. | (sleep) |
| (14) He managed to avoidhit by the bat. | (be) |

08

Rewrite the following with the correct forms of the verbs given within the brackets:

- (1) I (sleep) soundly and (dream) that a dog (enter) the room. I (spring) off the bed.
- (2) The shot (wound) the elephant. It (rush) back into the forest.
- (3) We (plan) to go to a hill station. Last year we (go) to Shimla. We (decide) to go somewhere else this time.
- (4) Railways (connect) almost all the big cities and towns. In olden days people (use) to travel on horse-back or bullock carts. Travelling (become) easy now. We can imagine the difficulty the people (face) in the past.

09

Fill in the blanks with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets:

- (a) Yesterday I (go) to the market to buy a pen. I ought to have (purchase) a good one but I (choose) a cheap one with the result that it (do) not write smoothly now.
- (b) I (wake) up early in the morning. I (go) out for a walk. Suddenly the wind (blow) violently. Many trees were (bring) down.
- (c) The next morning his landlord (bring) him two pieces of news with his breakfast. One was that someone had (plant) a most beautiful climbing rose in the lane, the other was that Mr. Ramesh couldn't be (find) anywhere in the village. Everyone was (worry) about him.
- (d) A walk through a garden (be) good for health and mind. We (go) for stroll in the Company Garden last Sunday. The flowers (present) a scene of colourfulness and we (feel) very happy.

10

Fill in the blanks with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets:

- (1) His mother (die) three months ago.
- (2) We were taught at school that water (boil) at 212°F.
- (3) He knew that I had (pass). (4) I should be pleased if he (not come).
- (5) When Sahni (be) on his way to the railway station it (begin) to rain.
- (6) Bakani (collect) stamps since childhood.
- (7) Now tests (carry) on to find out the reaction of the new medicines on animals.
- (8) I (go) for a walk daily in the evening. Last evening I (come) back from office rather late. Even though it (be) 7 P.M., I still (go), for my walk as usual. On (return) home I (find) that my little son (injure) his arm seriously. I (rush) to the nearby doctor for first aid.

11

Fill in the blanks with suitable verbs in agreement with the subjects. Select one from those given in the brackets:

- (a) Either the mother or the daughter made this pudding. (have, has)
- (b) A sum of fifty thousand rupees paid to him for this piece of land. (were, was)
- (c) A variety of subjects taught in this school. (is, are)
- (d) The father and his daughter coming to us today. (is, are)

12

Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs:

- (a) I love nature. The spring season (be) the best of all seasons. There (be) freshness all around. Nature (breath) a new life and (look) colourful like a bride. Beautiful flowers (dance) merrily.
- (b) The Taj Mahal (be) beautiful building. The Taj (stand) on the bank of the river Yamuna. It is (make) of white marble. It (have) four marble minarets on which the great dome (stand). Shah Jahan (build) it in memory of his beloved queen, Mumtaz, and it (cost) over three crore of rupees.

13

Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs.

- (a) Sound sleep (be) necessary for good health. Every body (dream) during sleep. Sometimes the dreams (be) pleasant and at others, unpleasant. Last week I (have) a very bad dream.
I (dream) that my class, accompanied by our teachers, (go) to Shimla for the weekend.
- (b) Last Sunday (be) a bad day for me as I (spend) the whole of it in bed. When I (get) up at 7 O'clock, I (have) a severe headache and (perspire). My mother (take) my temperature
I (consult) a doctor. He (check) me thoroughly.

14

Fill in the blanks choosing correct forms of the verbs from those given in the brackets:

- (1) A flock of sheep.....grazing in the ground. (is/are)
- (2) Time and tide.....for none. (wait/waits)
- (3) More than five persons.....signed the complaint. (have/has)
- (4) One third of the work.....lift incomplete. (was/were)
- (5) Neither he nor his sister.....invited. (was/were)
- (6) Sachin is one of the players who.....been selected for the match. (have/has)
- (7) One of the students of our class.....selected. (was/were)
- (8) Age and experience.....a man wise. (make/makes)
- (9) Ten times fifty.....five hundred. (is/are)
- (10) It is I who.....to answer him. (is/am)
- (11) The sun.....in the east. (rise)
- (12) I.....her last week at her residence. (meet)

15

Fill in the blanks with correct forms of the verbs given in the brackets:

- (1) What.....the latest news? (is/are)
- (2) Fifty rupees.....not a big amount. (is/are)
- (3) The United States.....a powerful nation. (is/are)
- (4) Economics.....an interesting subject. (is/are)
- (5) Cattle.....grazing in the field. (is/are)
- (6) Neither of us.....ready to go there. (is/are)
- (7) Billiards.....my favourite game. (is/are)
- (8) What I say and what I think.....my personal matters. (are/is)
- (9) Both of them.....good friends. (is/are)
- (10) What.....the news? (is/are)
- (11) Honesty.....the best policy. (be)
- (12) She.....a letter now. (write)

16

Fill in the blanks with suitable forms of verbs given in the brackets:

- (1) Half of the apples.....ripe. (is/are)
- (2) Half of the land.....uncultivated. (is /are)
- (3) Barking dogs never..... (bite/bites)
- (4) A lot of food.....still lying on the table. (is/are)
- (5) Fifty rupees.....not a big sum for him. (is/are)
- (6) The Himalayas.....a range of mountains. (is/are)
- (7) Neither she nor her son.....arrived so far. (has/have)
- (8) It is I who.....to bear the loss. (is/am)
- (9) I wish I.....a writer. (was/were)
- (10) Your trousers.....very tight. (is/are)
- (11) She.....a letter to me last month. (write)
- (12) I wish I.....a queen. (be)

17*Fill in the blanks with correct forms of the verbs given in the brackets:*

- | | |
|---|------------|
| (1) Suraj, rather than his friends.....guilty. | (is/are) |
| (2) Quarters of this type.....three bed rooms. | (has/have) |
| (3) Oil and water.....not mix fully. | (do/does) |
| (4) A bunch of keys.....found by her. | (was/were) |
| (5) His trousers.....not clean. | (is/are) |
| (6) A flock of sheep.....grazing in the field. | (is/are) |
| (7) Everyone of the students.....present in function. | (was/were) |
| (8) I wish I.....a beautiful girl. | (was/were) |
| (9) A set of combs.....been lost. | (has/have) |
| (10) I.....cricket, when she came. | (play) |
| (11) We.....that she would visit the college soon. | (expect) |

18*Fill in the blanks with suitable forms of the verb given in the brackets:*

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| (1) I.....Sita for a long time. | (not see) |
| (2) Who.....the Taj Mahal? | (build) |
| (3) Did you.....the poem ? | (learn) |
| (4) Ram.....here at 5 P.M. daily. | (come) |
| (5) I.....here for three years. | (live) |
| (6) She will come here if you.....him. | (invite) |
| (7) I.....her letter two days ago. | (receive) |
| (8) Sita will assist you if you.....her. | (ask) |
| (9) She.....come till now. | (not) |
| (10) He.....here for the last five years. | (work) |
| (11) Had she worked hard she..... | (pass) |
| (12) He said earth.....round the sun. | (move) |

19*Correct the following sentences:*

- (1) Rahul as well as his sisters were present in the party.
- (2) Suresh and not his relatives were arrested.
- (3) The Principal and the Warden was against the proposal.
- (4) Either Ram or his friends was guilty.
- (5) Neither Ram nor his friend Shyam were present in the party.
- (6) The horse and carriage are at the gate.
- (7) His kindness and benevolence are well known to everyone.
- (8) His friend and benefactor were present there to protect him.
- (9) The jury was divided in their opinion in that case.
- (10) The wages of sin are death.
- (11) Three parts of the house were left for me to live.
- (12) Rahul together with his elder brother were present in the meeting.
- (13) Neither of these questions are right.
- (14) He qualified himself as an engineer.
- (15) She has enlisted herself in the nursing college.

20

Correct the following sentences:

- (1) Either he or I is to represent the school.
- (2) Neither you nor he are to go now.
- (3) The mob move towards the collectorate.
- (4) The second innings were spoiled due to fire.
- (5) Each hour and each minute are to be utilised by you.
- (6) Every young and every old were happy to receive a gift.
- (7) Not only the Tajmahal but also other monuments is worth seeing.
- (8) The house with all its furniture were auctioned at a very low bid.
- (9) The peacock like other birds have wings to fly.
- (10) There is another schools better than this.
- (11) The poors are never reliable.
- (12) All the milk were used in the preparation of sweets.
- (13) All the animals were given the proper diet.
- (14) She apprised the inspector all that have happened tonight.
- (15) Most of the person are reliable.

21

Correct the following sentences:

- (1) About half of the girls was present in the hall.
- (2) Half of the sugar were spoiled due to heavy rains.
- (3) The apparatus purchased by the Nagar Parishad were very old.
- (4) The advice of his friend are indeed valuable.
- (5) Men after men were coming to visit the art gallery.
- (6) One month after another have passed.
- (7) His shoes is shining.
- (8) Approximately ten sheeps were grazing in the college ground.
- (9) A pair of shoes are purchased by her for her husband.
- (10) There are many fishes in the aquarium.
- (11) Each of the sports women were given a certificate.
- (12) I wish I will be the minister!
- (13) She ordered as if she is my elder sister.
- (14) God saves our queen!
- (15) He needs not go to market.

22

Correct the following sentences:

- (1) More than one girl were killed in the accident.
- (2) God blesses you with success!
- (3) Financial help from all the quarters were received.
- (4) The quality of these items are appreciated by everyone.
- (5) The fragrance of these beautiful flowers are liked by all.
- (6) More workman than one are not traceable.
- (7) He said, "Plenty of milk are required for the party."
- (8) A lot of books and magazines was destroyed by the fire.
- (9) The number of students opted Hindi in RAS are generally large.
- (10) A number of English magazines is available in the college library.

23

Correct the following sentences:

- (1) It is I who is responsible for the loss in the business.
- (2) The women who is standing there are my sisters.
- (3) He is one of those who does not know anything about the incident.
- (4) It is one of the problems that was taken care of by the civil administration.
- (5) Nothing but monkeys are seen.
- (6) No man and no woman were allowed to enter without payment.

- (7) Much of the time were wasted by the students.
- (8) More than one man were killed there.
- (9) Economic cooperation between India and China are decreasing day by day.
- (10) More students than one has participated in the annual function.

Spotting Errors (Verbs)

24

Rewrite the following sentences to find whether there is any error in any part:

- (1) He ordered (a)/ as if he (b)/ was my master. (c)
- (2) God saves (a)/ the queen Victoria. (b)
- (3) If it was so (a)/ poetry (b)/ would cease to matter. (c)
- (4) The merit (a)/ of these books (b)/ are known to everyone. (c)
- (5) The condition of (a)/ people living in (b)/ rural area (c)/ are very bad. (d)
- (6) The smell (a)/of these rose (b)/ flowers are (c)/ very sweet. (d)
- (7) The condolence messages (a)/ received on the (b)/ death of Mrs. Gandhi (c)/ speaks highly of her greatness. (d)
- (8) Economic cooperation (a)/ between the two countries (b)/ have increased substantially. (c)
- (9) A band of musicians (a)/ have been engaged (b)/ for the inaugural function. (c)
- (10) The number (a)/ of persons interested (b)/in psychology are (c)/generally small. (d)

25

Rewrite the following sentences to find whether there is any error in any part:

- (1) The manager's comments (a)/on the preparation of the test matches (b)/ for this tour (c)/ has been generally praised. (d)
- (2) The details (a)/of the incident (b)/was not known (c)/to me. (d)
- (3) The majority of (a)/writers never (b)/passes this stage. (c)
- (4) A large part of (a)/the distinctive features (b)/of the mind is due to its being (c)/ an instrument of communication. (d)
- (5) A part of (a)/the mango (b)/are rotten. (c)
- (6) A part of (a)/the mangoes (b)/are rather. (c)/ No error (d)
- (7) The governing body at (a)/its first meeting (b)/ have decided (c)/to conduct the test again. (d)
- (8) The banker's association (a)/has submitted a memorandum (b)/for the fulfilment of (c)/their demands. (d)
- (9) Five quintals of wooden coal (a)/are (b)/his annual requirement (c)/for the unit. (d)
- (10) Dickens have criticised (a)/the philosophy (b)/in 'Hard Times'. (c)

26

Rewrite the following sentences to find whether there is any error in any part:

- (1) All his money (a)/is spent (b) /and all his (c)/hopes ruined. (d)
- (2) This rule may (a)/and ought to be (b)/disregarded for the time being. (c)
- (3) He is one of the (a)/richest man (b)/if not the richest man (c)/in the world. (d)
- (4) We can almost get (a)/everything in (b)/this market. (c)
- (5) Every (a)/Tom, Dick and Harry (b)/drink wine these days. (c)
- (6) He and I (a)/is partners in (b)/this firm. (c)
- (7) He is one of the (a)/great man (b)/that have ever lived. (c)
- (8) The magistrate and collector (a)/were (b)/present there (c)/on the spot. (d)
- (9) Horse and Carriage (a)/are (b)/waiting there (c)/for the couple. (d)
- (10) Rice and fish (a)/are (b)/my favourite dish. (c)

27

Rewrite the following sentences to find whether there is any error in any part:

- (1) He is one of the (a)/tallest man (b)/if not the tallest man (c)/in the city. (d)
- (2) He made a blunder (a)/and worse than (b)/that a crime. (c)
- (3) The wheat (a)/on this farm (b)/is finer than (c)/last year. (d)
- (4) I scarcely have (a)/enough silk (b)/for my saree. (c)
- (5) Every day (a)/and every night (b)/bring its (c)/own pleasures for every one. (d)
- (6) He more than (a)/his parents (b)/are responsible (c)/for his bad habits. (d)
- (7) Bread and butter (a)/are (b)/a rich and nourishing food. (c)
- (8) Not only she (a)/but all her sisters (b)/has been married (c)/since long. (d)
- (9) There are (a)/nothing but (b)/miseries in her life. (c)
- (10) Either he (a)/or I is (b)/responsible for the loss. (c)



SOLUTIONS



TEST YOURSELF Exercises

Solution TYE 01

- (1) (b) I can help you की जगह can I help you होगा। under no circumstances के साथ Inversion का प्रयोग होता है
- (2) (c) nor she does की जगह nor does she आएगा। इस तरह के वाक्यों में nor के साथ Inversion का प्रयोग होता है।
- (3) (d) so John is की जगह so is John लिखा जाएगा। इस तरह के वाक्यों में so के साथ Inversion का प्रयोग होता है।
- (4) (a) Never के साथ Inversion लगता है। अतः never had I been लिखा जाएगा।
- (5) (b) On no account के साथ Inversion लगता है। अतः must this switch लिखा जाएगा।
- (6) (a) Seldom had I seen लिखा जाएगा। seldom/Hardly/ Rarely/Scarcely/Never के वाक्य शुरू होने पर Inversion लगता है।
- (7) (e) वाक्य सही है।
- (8) (b) To such a degree के बाद Inversion लगता है। अतः he created की जगह did he create आएगा।
- (9) (a) A Not only से वाक्य शुरू होने पर Inversion लगता है। Not only did he watch लिखा जाना चाहिए।
- (10) (a) No sooner से वाक्य शुरू होने पर Inversion लगता है। अतः No sooner did the plane land होना चाहिए।

Solution TYE 02

- (1) He has been living in Kolkata for five years .
- (2) At the moment he is playing in the park.
- (3) I wish I knew the girl's name.
- (4) She was taking a bath when the telephone rang.
- (5) I have already told you that you should work hard.
- (6) Ram always remembers that honesty is the best policy.
- (7) Ramesh had left his house before I called on him.
- (8) They always believe that love is stronger than hate.
- (9) She told me that her mother had gone to the doctor half an hour before.
- (10) I was washing my hands when he came.
- (11) I have already told you what to do under these circumstances.
- (12) It is high time you started working with full zeal.

Solution TYE 03

- (1) Ramesh passes the post-office on his way to office everyday.
- (2) He was watching television when Ramesh came in.
- (3) He told me that she had never met you.
- (4) He has been reading since 2 O'clock.
- (5) If you promise to work hard I shall allow you to go on leave.
- (6) The doctor arrived just before Sita went away.
- (7) The sun shines by day and the moon by night.
- (8) She has been attending college since May last.
- (9) You will receive your prize tomorrow.
- (10) I had dinner last night at 9 O'clock.
- (11) I had written a letter before I went to play.
- (12) He was reading the newspaper when Ram came in.

Solution TYE 04

- (a) A farmer was very fond of the two animals. When he came out for a stroll, these two creatures amused him. One day as the farmer was walking in the garden, these pets ran away from him. He searched for them but of no avail.
- (b) He was a black man. One winter morning he looked out of his window as he was dressing. He did not hate the asleep that the flowers were resting.

Solution TYE 05

- (1) When they left this morning, the sun was shining.
- (2) The Chairman cannot see anybody as he is dictating some letters.
- (3) If it is possible we shall go to Chennai tomorrow.
- (4) Ram has been suffering from fever since yesterday night.
- (5) We have nothing to eat for three days.
- (6) He said that he would go for a walk today in the evening.
- (7) If I were you I would refuse to accept the bribe.
- (8) We were surprised at the news of his defeat.
- (9) He was caught while stealing the jewels.
- (10) The children were pleased at the prospect of going for a picnic.
- (11) She was ashamed of herself.
- (12) Ravi Shankar was honoured by the Music Society.
- (13) Do you like playing cricket?
- (14) Did the doctor come to see you yesterday?
- (15) Does it rain all the year round here?

Solution TYE 06

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) She saw that the clock had stopped. | (2) He replied that he was feeling better. |
| (3) Ramesh is working so hard that he is certain to succeed. | |
| (4) He speaks as one who knows. | (5) So long as the rain continued I stayed in office. |
| (6) If I go to market I shall bring a pen for you. | (7) A child always enjoys magazines about ghosts. |
| (8) He went to Delhi last week. | (9) They have been staying in Jaipur for three years. |
| (10) They have been waiting here for the last two hours. | |
| (11) I wrote to her day before yesterday. | (12) These students will play cricket next Sunday. |
| (13) It was raining when they went out. | (14) Cow eats grass. |
| (15) We went to the pictures yesterday. | |

Solution TYE 07

- (1) She wrote letters yesterday.
- (2) The construction of new hotel was stopped.
- (3) I have studied English for three years now.
- (4) I have known her for a very long time.
- (5) He went away last week.
- (6) We played tennis together last June.
- (7) I enjoy watching a good social film.
- (8) The little boy admitted that he had broken the glass.
- (9) She forgot to lock the door when she went to market.
- (10) As she was waiting there, someone bumped into her.
- (11) He will unlock the door when he gets here.
- (12) He would have done it if you had told him to so.
- (13) He is used to sleeping on a hard bed so he does not mind.
- (14) He managed to avoid being hit by the bat.

Solution TYE 08

- (1) I was sleeping soundly and dreamt that a dog had entered the room. I sprang off the bed.
- (2) The shot wounded the elephant. It rushed back into the forest.
- (3) We are planning to go to a hill station. Last year we went to Shimla. We have decided to go somewhere else this time.
- (4) Railways connect almost all the big cities and towns. In olden days people used to travel on horse-back or bullock carts. Travelling has become easy now. We can imagine the difficulty the people faced in the past.

Solution TYE 09

- (a) Yesterday I went to market to buy a pen. I ought to have purchased a good one but I chose a cheap one with the result that it does not write smoothly now.
- (b) I woke up early in the morning. I went out for a walk. Suddenly the wind blew violently. Many trees were brought down.
- (c) The next morning his landlord brought him two pieces of news with his breakfast. One was that someone had planted a most beautiful climbing rose in the lane, the other was that Mr. Ramesh couldn't be found anywhere in the village. Everyone was worried about him.
- (d) A walk through a garden is good for health and mind. We went for stroll in the Company Garden last Sunday. The flowers presented a scene of colourfulness and we felt very happy.

Solution TYE 10

- (1) His mother died three months ago.
- (2) We were taught at school that water boils at 212° F.
- (3) He knew that I had passed.
- (4) I should be pleased if he does not come.
- (5) When Sahni was on his way to the railway station it began to rain.
- (6) Bakani has been collecting stamps since childhood.
- (7) Now tests are being carried on to find out the reaction of the new medicines on animals.
- (8) I go for a walk daily in the evening. Last evening I came back from office rather late. Even though it was 7 P.M. I still went for my walk as usual. On returning home I found that my little son injured his arm seriously. I rushed to the nearby doctor for first aid

Solution TYE 11

- (a) Either the mother or the daughter has made this pudding.
- (b) A sum of fifty thousand rupees was paid to him for this piece of land.
- (c) A variety of subjects is taught in this school.
- (d) The father and his daughter are coming to us today.

Solution TYE 12

- (a) is, is, breathes, looks, dance
 (b) is, stands, made, has, stands, built, cost

Solution TYE 13

- (a) is, dreams, are, had, dreamed, had gone
 (b) was, spent, got, had, was perspiring, took, consulted, checked.

Solution TYE 14

- | | | | | | |
|----------|------------|-----------|----------|-------------|-----------|
| (1) is, | (2) wait, | (3) have, | (4) was, | (5) was, | (6) have, |
| (7) was, | (8) makes, | (9) is, | (10) am, | (11) rises, | (12) met. |

Solution TYE 15

- | | | | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|------------------|
| (1) is, | (2) is, | (3) is, | (4) is, | (5) are, | (6) is, |
| (7) is, | (8) are, | (9) are, | (10) is, | (11) is, | (12) is writing. |

Solution TYE 16

- | | | | | | |
|----------|---------|-----------|-----------|-------------|------------|
| (1) are, | (2) is, | (3) bite, | (4) is, | (5) is, | (6) are, |
| (7) has, | (8) am, | (9) were, | (10) are, | (11) wrote, | (12) were. |

Solution TYE 17

- | | | | | | |
|----------|-----------|----------|-------------------|----------|---------|
| (1) is, | (2) have, | (3) do, | (4) is, | (5) are, | (6) is, |
| (7) was, | (8) were, | (9) has, | (10) was playing, | | |
- (11) had expected.

Solution TYE 18

- | | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|------------|--------------|------------------------|
| (1) have not seen, | (2) built, | (3) learn, | (4) comes, | (5) have been living, |
| (6) invite, | (7) received, | (8) ask, | (9) has not, | (10) has been working, |
- (11) would have been passed, (12) moves.

Solution TYE 19

- (1) Rahul as well as his sisters was present in the party.
- (2) Suresh and not his relatives was arrested.
- (3) The Principal and the Warden were against the proposal.
- (4) Either Ram or his friends were guilty.
- (5) Neither Ram nor his friend Shyam was present in the party.
- (6) The horse and carriage is at the gate.
- (7) His kindness and benevolence is well known to everyone.
- (8) His friend and benefactor was present there to protect him.
- (9) The jury were divided in their opinion in that case.
- (10) The wages of sin is death.
- (11) Three parts of the house was left for me to live.
- (12) Rahul together with his elder brother was present in the meeting.
- (13) Neither of these questions is right.
- (14) He qualified as an engineer.
- (15) She has enlisted in the nursing college.

Solution TYPE 20

- (1) Either he or I am to represent the school.
- (2) Neither you nor he is to go now.
- (3) The mob moves towards the collectorate.
- (4) The second innings was spoiled due to fire.
- (5) Each hour and each minute is to be utilised by you.
- (6) Every young and every old was happy to receive a gift.
- (7) Not only the Tajmahal but also other monuments are worth seeing.
- (8) The house with all its furniture was auctioned at a very low bid.
- (9) The peacock like other birds has wings to fly.
- (10) There is another school better than this.
- (11) The poor are never reliable.
- (12) All the milk was used in the preparation of sweets.
- (13) All the animals were given the proper diet.
- (14) She apprises the inspector all that has happened tonight.
- (15) Most of the persons are reliable.

Solution TYE 21

- (1) About half of the girls were present in the hall.
- (2) Half of the sugar was spoiled due to heavy rains.
- (3) The apparatus purchased by the Nagar Parishad was very old.
- (4) The advice of his friend is indeed valuable.
- (5) Man after man was coming to visit the art gallery.
- (6) One month after another has passed.
- (7) His shoes are shining.
- (8) Approximately ten sheep were grazing in the college ground.
- (9) A pair of shoes is purchased by her for her husband.
- (10) There are many fish in the aquarium.
- (11) Each of the sportswoman given a certificate.
- (12) I wish I were the minister.
- (13) She ordered as if she were my elder sister.
- (14) God save our queen!
- (15) He need not go to market.

Solution TYE 22

- (1) More than one girl was killed in the accident.
- (2) God bless you with success!
- (3) Financial help from all the quarters was received.
- (4) The quality of these items is appreciated by everyone.
- (5) The fragrance of these beautiful flowers is liked by all.
- (6) More workman than one is not traceable.
- (7) He said, "Plenty of milk is required for the party."
- (8) A lot of books and magazines were destroyed by the fire.
- (9) The number of students opted Hindi in RAS is generally large.
- (10) A number of English magazines are available in the college library.

Solution TYE 23

- (1) It is I who am responsible for the loss in the business.
- (2) The women who are standing there are my sisters.
- (3) He is one of those who do not know anything about the incident.

- (4) It is one of the problems that were taken care of by the civil administration.
- (5) Nothing but monkeys is seen.
- (6) No man and no woman was allowed to enter without payment.
- (7) Much of the time was wasted by the students.
- (8) More than one man was killed there.
- (9) Economic cooperation between India and China is decreasing day by day.
- (10) More students than one have participated in the annual function.

Solution TYE 24

- (1) (c) was की जगह 'were' आएगा। जब वाक्य में कल्पना (Imaginations) का भाव हो, तो singular subject के साथ 'were' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे:
I wish I were a king. I wish it were possible.
- (2) (a) saves की जगह save आएगा। ऐसे वाक्य जिनमें कोई इच्छा (desire), अभिलाषा (wish) या आशीर्वाद (blessing) का भाव हो तो verbs; bless, live, save एवं help हमेशा plural में आती है अर्थात् इनके साथ s नहीं लगता है। जैसे: May Lord help you! Long live our friendship!
- (3) (a) was की जगह 'were' आएगा। Question (1) का explanation देखें। 'If it was so' reflects imaginations.
- (4) (c) 'are' की जगह 'is' आएगा। यहाँ subject 'merit' है, जो singular है अतः verb singular होगी।
- (5) (d) 'are' की जगह 'is' आएगा। यहाँ subject of the verb, condition है जो singular है। अतः verb भी singular होगी।
- (6) (c) 'are' की जगह 'is' लिखें। यहाँ subject of the verb is 'small' 'which is singular अतः verb (is) भी singular ही लगेगी।
- (7) (d) speaks की जगह speak आएगा verb (speak) का subject, condolence messages है, जो plural है अतः verb, plural होगी।
- (8) (c) 'have' की जगह 'has' आएगा subject economic cooperation singular है। अतः verb भी singular होगा।
- (9) (b) have been की जगह has been आएगा। A 'band' collective noun है जिसके साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होगा।
- (10) (c) 'are' की जगह 'is' आएगा। 'The number' एक निश्चित संख्या को बताता है, collective noun की जगह प्रयुक्त होती है। अतः हमेशा singular verb का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

Solution TYPE 25

- (1) (d) 'has been' की जगह 'have been' आएगा। verb का subject, manager's comments है जो कि plural है अतः verb भी plural होगी।
- (2) (c) 'was' की जगह were आएगा। subject of the verb—details, plural है। अतः verb भी plural (were) होगी।
- (3) (c) passes की जगह pass आएगा। The majority of ए यहाँ 'of' के बाद जो noun आया है, वह plural (writers) है, अतः verb भी plural ही रहेगी।
- (4) (c) 'mind is due' की जगह mind are due आएगा। of के बाद (A large part of the distinctive features) आने वाला noun यहाँ plural (features) है। अतः verb भी plural लगेगी।
- (5) (c) 'are' की जगह 'is' लिखें। of के बाद (A part of the mango) आने वाला noun (mango) singular है, अतः verb भी singular लगेगी।
- (6) (d) No error. of के बाद आने वाला noun (mangoes) plural है, अतः verb भी plural लगेगी।
- (7) (c) have की जगह has लिखें governing body, collective noun है अतः verb singular लगेगी।
- (8) (d) 'their' की जगह 'its' लगेगा। The banker's association एक collective noun है। अतः यहाँ pronoun, its आएगा।
- (9) (b) 'are' की जगह 'is' लिखें 'five quintals एक निश्चित weight को व्यक्त करता है जो collective noun की तरह singular noun का बोध कराता है, अतः verb singular (is) ही लगेगी।
- (10) (a) have की जगह has लगेगा Dickens एक व्यक्ति का नाम है।

Solution TYE 26

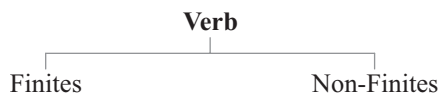
- (1) (d) hopes के बाद 'are' insert करें। जब वाक्य में पहले आने वाली verb (यहाँ 'is') दूसरे noun के number एवं person से मेल नहीं खाती है, तो दूसरे noun के अनुसार अलग से verb का प्रयोग होता है। Hopes, plural है अतः यहाँ plural verb लगेगा।
- (2) (a) may के बाद 'be' का प्रयोग करें। प्रश्न (1) का Explanation देखें।
- (3) (b) richest man की जगह richest men आएगा। one of के बाद आने वाले adjective के साथ plural noun आता है।
- (4) (a) We can almost get की जगह we can get almost लिखना चाहिए। adverb के गलत जगह लिखने से वाक्य का अर्थ ही बदल जाता है।
- (5) (c) drink की जगह drinks आएगा। Every, Each के साथ इस तरह के वाक्यों में singular verb लगती है।
6. (b) 'is' की जगह 'are' आएगा। जब दो nouns को and से जोड़ा जाता है तो verb, plural आती है।
- (7) (b) one of the के बाद adjective के बाद plural noun आता है 'man' की जगह 'men' लिखें।
- (8) (b) were की जगह 'was' लिखें। यहाँ magistrate एवं collector एक ही व्यक्ति को refer करते हैं।
- (9) (b) 'are' की जगह 'is' लिखें। Horse and carriage जोड़े की तरह एक ही वस्तु का ज्ञान कराते हैं। अतः verb singular लगेगी।
- (10) (b) are की जगह 'is' लिखें। Rice and fish एक pair की तरह, एक चीज का ही संकेत करते हैं। अतः verb, singular लगेगी।

Solution TYE 27

- (1) (b) tallest man की जगह tallest men लिखें। one of the के बाद आने वाले adjective के साथ plural noun आता है।
- (2) (c) That a crime की जगह That committed a crime होगा। वाक्य में भाग (a) में आने वाली verb made के साथ crime का मेल नहीं बैठता है।
- (3) (d) Last year की जगह than it was last year लिखें। वाक्य में wheat की quality का comparison, year से हो रहा है, अतः गलत है।
- (4) (a) I scarcely have की जगह I have scarcely लिखा जाना चाहिए। Misplacement of adverb can change the meaning of a sentence.
- (5) (c) bring की जगह brings आएगा। इस तरह के वाक्यों में singular noun का प्रयोग every /each के साथ होता है।
- (6) (c) 'are' की जगह 'is' लिखें। जब दो nouns; as well as, more than, besides etc से संयुक्त हों तो verb से पहले noun के अनुसार लगती है। यहाँ verb 'He' के अनुसार 'is' ही लगेगी।
- (7) (b) 'are' की जगह 'is' आएगा। bread and butter, pair की तरह एक ही वस्तु का ज्ञान कराते हैं।
- (8) (c) 'has' की जगह 'have' लिखें। जब वाक्य में not only, but also का प्रयोग हो तो verb पास वाले noun के अनुसार लगती है, यहाँ पास वाला noun, her sisters है, अतः verb plural लगेगी।
- (9) (a) 'There are' की जगह 'There is' लिखें। Nothing but के साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होता है।
- (10) (b) 'is' की जगह 'am' आएगा। ऐसे वाक्यों में verb अपने नजदीक वाले noun या pronoun के अनुसार लगती है यहाँ I है, अतः 'am' लगेगा।

NON-FINITES

Verb को Finite verb, एवं Non-finite verbs में भी वर्गीकृत किया जाता है।



Finite Verb

जिन verbs में subject के Number, Person एवं Tense के अनुसार परिवर्तन होता है, finite verbs कहलाती हैं।

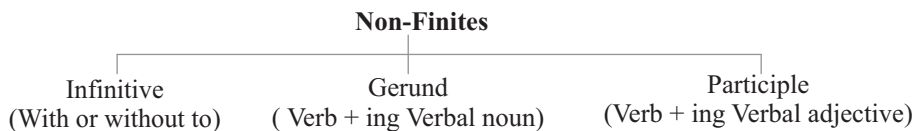
Look at the following sentences :

- | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| (a) I like to play. | (b) He likes to play. | (c) They like to play. |
| (d) He liked to play. | (e) She liked to play. | (f) They liked to play. |

उक्त वाक्यों में like, finite verb हैं जो first person singular (I) एवं third person plural (they) के साथ तो like ही है, लेकिन third person singular (he) के साथ likes के रूप में है। इसी प्रकार past tense में इसका रूप liked हो गया है। अतः like एक finite verb है।

Non-Finites

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में to play; non-finite verb है जिसका रूप subject के number, person एवं वाक्य के tense से अप्रभावित है। अतः non-finite verbs ऐसी verbs होती हैं, जिन पर वाक्य के tense के subject के person एवं number का कोई प्रभाव नहीं पड़ता है। एक और महत्वपूर्ण बिन्दू है, कि Finite verb का एक subject अवश्य होता है लेकिन Non-finite verb का स्वयं का कोई subject (कर्ता) नहीं होता, बल्कि यह एक object की तरह वाक्य में दिखाई पड़ती है, जैसे : उक्त वाक्यों में like (Finite verb) का subject, I, He, They इत्यादि हैं। जबकि Non-finite verb; to play एक object की तरह प्रयुक्त हुई है।



(1) Infinitive

इसको सामान्यतया 'to + verb' के रूप में जाना एवं पहचाना जाता है। जैसे : to play, to go, to walk etc. लेकिन कभी-कभी 'to' नहीं भी आता है। इस प्रकार की Infinitive को Bare Infinitive (Infinitive without to) कहा जाता है। जैसे :

I saw him go, I bade him go etc. यहाँ go, bare infinitive है।

Forms of Infinitive

Tense एवं voice के अनुसार Infinitive की निम्न forms होती हैं :

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| (a) Present infinitive simple | – (To + infinitive) ‘to do, to go. |
| (b) Present infinitive negative | – (Not to + infinitive) not to do, not to go. |
| (c) Present continuous | – (To be + ...ing) to be doing, to be going. |
| (d) Perfect infinitive | – (To have + past participle) to have gone, to have done. |
| (e) Perfect infinitive passive | – (To have been + past participle) to have been done. |
| (f) Present infinitive passive | – (To be + past participle) to be done, to be gone. |
| (g) Perfect continuous infinitive | – (To have been + ...ing) to have been doing. |

Kinds of Infinitive

Infinitive को इनके प्रयोग के आधार पर दो भागों में वर्गीकृत किया जाता है

- (1) **Simple Infinitive or Noun Infinitive** : इनका प्रयोग वाक्य में noun की तरह होता है। जब हिन्दी वाक्य के अन्त में ‘ना’ या ‘नी’ लगा हो तो सामान्यता ये simple infinitive को व्यक्त करते हैं। जैसे :

I am to go.	मुझे जाना है।
He is about to go.	वह जाने को है।

- (2) **Gerundial Infinitive** : जब Infinitive का प्रयोग वाक्य में Adjective या Adverb की तरह होता है तो उसे gerundial infinitive कहा जाता है। जैसे :

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (a) The sweet is good to eat. | (b) This is the house to let. |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|

Use of Simple Infinitive

Simple Infinitive / Noun Infinitive का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार से किया जाता है :

- (1) **As subject (कर्ता के रूप में) :**

- | | |
|--|--|
| (a) <u>To abuse</u> is wrong. | (b) <u>To live</u> peacefully is not easy. |
| (c) <u>To find</u> fault is very easy. | |

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Infinitive (underlined) का प्रयोग कर्ता के रूप में हुआ है। इस तरह के वाक्यों को निम्न प्रकार भी लिखा जा सकता है :

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| (a) To live peacefully is not easy. | It is not easy to live peacefully. |
| (b) To abuse is wrong. | It is wrong to abuse. |
| (c) To find faults is easy. | It is easy to find faults. |

- (2) **As object of a verb (क्रिया के verb के रूप में) :**

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| (a) I love <u>to play</u> . | (b) I want <u>to write</u> . | (c) I wish <u>to wait</u> there. |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|

यहाँ Infinitive, ‘to play’, ‘to write’, ‘to wait’ का प्रयोग verb के object के रूप में हुआ है।

- (3) **As object of a preposition (Preposition के object के रूप में) :**

- | | |
|---|---|
| (a) The bus is about <u>to start</u> . | (b) I have no choice but <u>to go</u> . |
| (c) The match is yet <u>to finish</u> . | |

इन वाक्यों में Infinitive ‘to start’, ‘to go’, ‘to finish’ का प्रयोग preposition, about, but एवं yet के object के रूप में किया गया है।

- (4) **As complement of a verb (क्रिया के पूरक के रूप में) :**

- | | |
|---|---|
| (a) He only wishes <u>to be</u> an IAS Officer. | (b) His ambition is <u>to build</u> a temple. |
| (c) Her dream is <u>to purchase</u> the whole city. | |

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Infinitive; to be, to build, to purchase का प्रयोग verbs के complements के रूप में किया गया है। बिना इनका प्रयोग किये verb का अर्थ पूरा नहीं होता है। अतः ये verb के पूरक (complementary) कहलाते हैं।

(5) As an objective complement (Object के पूरक के रूप में) :

- (a) I saw her go. (b) I bade him go.
(c) I shall have you realise your mistake.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Infinitive का प्रयोग objective complement के रूप में हुआ है ध्यान दें : उक्त वाक्यों में object, क्रमशः her, him, you हैं तथा Infinitive इन objects के पूरक के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुए हैं। यह भी नोट करें कि ये सभी Bare Infinitive हैं।

Use of Gerundial Infinitive

जैसा पूर्व में बताया गया है कि Gerundial Infinitives का प्रयोग वाक्य में Adjective या Adverb की तरह किया जाता है। Gerundial Infinitives का प्रयोग निम्न स्थितियों में किया जाता है :

(1) To modify a verb (क्रिया को संशोधित करने हेतु) :

सामान्यतया Infinitives का इस तरह का प्रयोग एक उद्देश्य (purpose) को व्यक्त करता है।

- (a) He came to meet her. (b) We earn to live happily.
(c) We went there to learn.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Infinitive एक purpose को व्यक्त करते हैं।

(2) To modify a noun (noun को संशोधित करने हेतु) :

- (a) There is no chair to sit. (b) I have no money to waste.
(c) I have no magazine to read.

यहाँ Infinitive, noun को विशेषता प्रदान करते हैं।

(3) To modify an adjective (adjective को संशोधित करने हेतु) :

- (a) I am happy to meet you. (b) These fruit are delicious to eat.
(c) I was worried to know it.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Infinitive, adjectives, happy delicious, worried को quality / modify करते हैं।

(4) To modify the whole sentence (पूरे वाक्य को ही संशोधित करने हेतु) :

- (a) To tell the truth, I forgot what I said. (b) To be honest, I indeed didn't recognise her.
(c) To swim in sea water is very easy.

यहाँ Infinitive वाक्य के शुरू में आये हैं एवं पूरे वाक्य को ही संशोधित कर रहे हैं।

Bare Infinitive or Infinitive Without 'to'

जैसा पूर्व में बताया गया है, बहुत सी स्थितियों में Infinitive के साथ 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है।

Use of Bare Infinitive

(1) निम्न Auxiliary verbs के साथ आने वाले Infinitives के साथ 'to' नहीं लगाया जाता है। shall, will, should, do, did, may, might, must, can, could, need.

- (a) I shall play. (b) He will come. (c) I should write.
(d) He would write. (e) I may go. (f) He might come.
(g) They must play. (h) He can say. (i) I could talk.
(j) He need not come here.



ought एवं used (ये सभी Modal auxiliaries हैं।) के साथ to का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) He ought to come here. (b) He used to smoke.
(c) I am used to the vehicular noise.

Dare, Need का प्रयोग जब modals की तरह किया जाता है। (सामान्यतया Negative एवं Interrogative वाक्यों में) तो इनके साथ 'to' नहीं लगता है। लेकिन जब इनका प्रयोग principal verbs की तरह किया जाता है तो इनके साथ 'to' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|
| (a) He dare not speak so. | As modal |
| (b) Dare she complain against you ? | As modal |
| (c) He dares to speak so. | As principal verb |
| (d) She dares to talk like that. | Principal verb |
| (e) He need not go there. | As modal |
| (f) He needs my help. | As principal verb |



Need के साथ कई स्थितियों में Principal verb की तरह प्रयोग करने पर 'to' लगता है, कई स्थितियों में नहीं भी लगता है।

(2) निम्न verb के बाद आने वाले Infinitive के साथ 'to' का प्रयोग Active voice में नहीं होता है। Bid, let, make, feel, watch, behold, hear, overhear, notice, observe, see, etc.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| (a) She bade me go. | (b) Let her sing. |
| (c) I made him sing | (d) I didn't notice him go. |
| (e) I feel her touch. | (f) I observed him play. |

लेकिन यदि उक्त verb का प्रयोग passive voice में किया जायेगा तो Infinitive के साथ 'to' का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| (a) He was made to sing. | (b) I was bidden to go. |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|



लेकिन let के साथ passive में भी 'to' नहीं लगेगा : She was let sing.

(3) निम्न शब्दों के साथ Bare Infinitive का ही प्रयोग किया जाता है। had better, would rather, would sooner, sooner than, rather than, had sooner etc.

- | |
|--|
| (a) He had better withdraw. |
| (b) You had better resign. |
| (c) He would sooner resign than fight with the boss. |
| (d) I would go rather than waste my time here. |

उक्त वाक्यों के structure का ध्यान रखे। इस तरह के वाक्यों में verb की First form (Infinitive without to) का प्रयोग होता है। इस तरह के वाक्य परीक्षा में कई रूप में पूछे जाते हैं।

(4) वाक्य में यदि conjunction, than का प्रयोग हुआ है तो उसके बाद Bare infinitive का प्रयोग ही होगा। जैसे :

- | |
|---|
| (a) She is better able to speak than write. |
| (b) He is stronger than I. |

(5) Have / has / had के बाद यदि noun या pronoun आता है एवं उसके बाद कोई Infinitive का प्रयोग होता है। तो वह Bare infinitive (Infinitive without to) होगा। जैसे :

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| (a) I will have him realise his mistake. | (b) I had him know his mistakes. |
| (c) They will have you accept your fault. | |

- (6) निम्न प्रकार के वाक्यों में except to / but to नहीं लगता है।
 (a) I can do nothing but protest. (b) He did nothing but cry.
 (c) They did nothing but weep. (d) The dog does nothing except bark.
- (7) Why + Bare infinitive का प्रयोग इस तरह के प्रश्न पूछने के लिए किया जाता है। जिनसे यह जाहिर होता है कि इस तरह का मूर्खतापूर्ण कार्य क्यों किया गया है? जैसे :
 (a) Why hire a taxi? (When we have sufficient room to accommodate you.)
 (b) Why talk to him? (When he has openly criticized you.)
- जबकि Why not + infinitive से सुझाव/सलाह दी जाती है।
 (a) Why not consult a doctor? (b) Why not write to your father?
 (c) Why not inform your parents?

Specific Use of Infinitives Rules

- (1) निम्न Verbs के बाद सीधे ही Infinitive (With to) का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है
- | | | | | | | | |
|---------|-----------|------------|-------------|------------------|---------|-----|-----------|
| agree | appear | aim | arrange | target | attempt | ask | guarantee |
| bother | claim | | | | | | |
| happen | care | decide | learn | choose | | | |
| demand | pretend | condescend | determine | promise | | | |
| consent | resolve | prove | decline | to be determined | | | |
| seem | fail | swear | hesitate | threaten | | | |
| hope | undertake | long | manage | neglect | | | |
| offer | plan | prepare | be prepared | proceed | | | |
| refuse | tend | trouble | (negative) | volunteer | vow | | |
- (a) He agreed to pay ₹ 250 only. (b) They are preparing to evacuate the colony.
 (c) He refused to surrender. (d) I volunteered to help with bread and money.
 (e) They can't afford to live in this posh area. (f) I don't bother to answer any question.
 (g) We failed to contact her in time.
- (2) निम्न Verbs का प्रयोग Verb+Object+Infinitive या Verb+Infinitive किसी भी प्रकार किया जा सकता है : ask, beg, expect, would hate, help, intend, like, would like, would love, mean, prefer, want, wish. जैसे :
- (a) He likes to drink well. (b) He likes his friends to drink well.
 (c) I want to go. (d) I want you to go.
 (e) I asked him to come here. (f) I asked him to speak to Mrs. James.
 (g) I begged to go (Please let me go). (h) I begged him to go (Please go).
 (i) I expect her to arrive tomorrow. (j) I expect to arrive tomorrow.



Care, hate, like, love एवं prefer के बाद Gerund का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है।

(3) कुछ Verbs का प्रयोग निम्न structure में किया जाता है :

Verb + Object + Infinitive :

advise	forbid	entitle	allow
oblige	teach	bribe	order
tell command	implore	permit	
tempt	compels	induce	persuade
instruct	remind	urge	encourage
invite	request	train	enable
warn	force	make*	hear*
let* see*	watch*	feel*	
help*	notice*	observe*	look at*

(*) लगी हुई Verbs के साथ Infinitive 'without to' (Bare infinitive) का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :

- (a) He persuaded me to go with her. (b) I have trained these dogs to sniff out drugs.
 (c) He encouraged me to try again. (d) They forbade us to pluck the flowers.
 (e) These goggles will enable you to see in dim light.
 (f) We watched him clear the table.
 (g) They heard the thief crash through the door.
 (h) She made me do it.
 (i) We helped her finish the homework.



Verbs, show, teach, tell के साथ उक्त Structure में Infinitive का प्रयोग करते समय how का प्रयोग करना आवश्यक है। जैसे :

- (a) He showed me how to operate the machine.
 (b) He told me how to replace a fuse.
 (c) He taught me how to light a cigarette without a match box.
 जब कभी 'Skill' बहुत common हो तो how का प्रयोग नहीं भी किया जाता है।
 (a) He taught me to ride. (b) He taught me to write my name.

(4) Verb + How/what/when/where/which/why + infinitive :

उक्त structure में सामान्यतया verbs; ask, decide, discover, find out, forget, know, learn, remember, see (= understand, perceive), think, understand, want to know, wonder etc का प्रयोग किया जाता है। उसके अतिरिक्त उक्त structure में show+ object + wh-word + infinitive का भी प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :

- (a) He knows how to swim.
 (b) He discovered how to operate the machine.
 (c) I asked him, where to buy fruits at reasonable rate.
 (d) I remember when to switch off the machine.
 (e) Tell me what to do.
 (f) He wants to know how to write a good letter.
 (g) I learned how to write a good precis.
 (h) I showed him which button to press.
 (i) I remembered to get a ticket.
 (j) I decided to do it.



Verbs; ask, decide, forget, learn, remember के बाद सीधे ही Infinitive का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है। जैसे :

- (a) She learnt to drive a car. (b) She decide to go to Jaipur.
(c) She asked to bring a copy. (d) I remembered to get a ticket.

- (5) Whether + infinitive का प्रयोग verbs, want to know एवं wonder के साथ निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है :
(a) I wonder whether to write or not.
(b) I wanted to know whether to protest or keep silence.
- (6) Infinitive का the first, the second,..... the last, the only के बाद प्रयोग एवं superlative degree of adjectives के साथ प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार होता है :
(a) Sita loves parties, she is always the first to arrive and the last to leave.
(the first who comes and the last who leaves).
(b) He was the only one to survive the accident.
(the only one who survived).
(c) It was the best play to be performed that year.
(means the best play that was performed that year).
- (7) Verbs; assume, believe, feel, suppose, consider, understand का प्रयोग निम्न structure में किया जाता है :
Verb + object + to be :
(a) I assume him to be the best athlete.
(b) I consider him to be an honest person.
(c) I thought her to be a dedicated teacher.
(d) He is supposed to be washing the car.
- (8) निम्न nouns के बाद infinitive का प्रयोग सीधे ही किया जा सकता है। ये nouns हैं :
ability decision effort promise willingness
ambition demand failure refusal wish
anxiety determination offer request desire
attempt eagerness plan scheme
(a) He made an attempt to walk without support .
(b) His ability to get the work done is his main assets.
(c) Failure to find the fault may result in termination.
(d) Their offer/plan/promise to rebuild the house was not taken seriously.
(e) His unwillingness to do his work may result in his dismissal.
(f) She made an effort to solve the problem.
- (9) Infinitive after 'too',
(I) **too + adjective + infinitive :**
(a) He is too weak to walk. (He is so weak that he cannot walk).
(b) He is too young to get married . (He is so young that he cannot get married).
(c) The box was too heavy to be carried by me.
(d) The grass was too wet to sit on.
(e) The light is too dim to read by.
- उपरोक्त वाक्यों में too के बाद adjective प्रयोग होने के बाद infinitive का प्रयोग हुआ है।
- (II) कई वाक्यों में too के साथ infinitive का प्रयोग निम्न structure में होता है :
too + adjective + a + noun + infinitive
(a) He is too shrewd a man to rely on anybody.
(b) He is too experienced a driver to mind what anybody say.

(III) too + adverb + infinitive :

- (a) It is too soon to say whether the plan will run or not.
- (b) He cried too loudly to be understood by any one.
- (c) He works too slowly to be much use to her.

too के साथ infinitive का प्रयोग negativity show करता है। इस तरह के वाक्य दैनिक जीवन में बहुत प्रयोग में आते हैं।

(10) Infinitive after enough :**(I) Adjective + enough + infinitive :**

- (a) He is matured enough to take decisions. (b) She is bold enough to travel by herself.
- (c) He is intelligent enough to solve the question. (d) The ice was thick enough to walk on.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में adjective के बाद enough का प्रयोग हुआ है एवं फिर infinitive का प्रयोग हुआ है।

(II) Adverb + enough + infinitive :

- (a) He jumped high enough to win the first prize.
- (b) He spoke loudly enough to understand by all.
- (c) He walked quickly enough to catch the train.
- (d) She ran fast enough to catch the bus.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में high, loudly, quickly, fast ; adverbs हैं।

(11) So..... as + infinitive :

- (a) He was so foolish as to leave his car unlocked.
- (b) He was so intelligent as to argue without any difficult.
- (c) Would you be so kind as to forward my request?

So.....as के साथ infinitive का प्रयोग सामान्यतया (c) की तरह request हेतु किया जाता है।

(12) Repetition को avoid करने के लिए 'to' का प्रयोग निम्न स्थिति में किया जाता है :

- (a) Would you like to accompany me? Yes, I love to.
- (b) Did you get a book ? No, I tried to, but there weren't left any.
- (c) Why did you hire a taxi? I had to, I was very late.
- (d) Does he swim? Not now, but he used to.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों 'to' 'to + infinitive' का कार्य करता दिखाई देता है। Repetition को avoid करने हेतु 'to' का यह महत्वपूर्ण प्रयोग है।

(13) Infinitive के बाद में only का प्रयोग कर्ता की निराशा (disappointment), हताशा (frustration) को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे:

- (a) He hurried to his house only to find his wife dead.
- (b) He survived the crash only to die in the hills.
- (c) He hurried to the house only to find that it was looted by the thieves.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में infinitive का only के बाद प्रयोग कर्ता की निराशा को व्यक्त करता है।

The Split Infinitives

(14) Infinitive के बीच में (to , एवं infinitive) कोई भी adverb या शब्द लिखना traditional grammar में गलत माना है। लेकिन आजकल बहुत लेखक split of Infinitives को सही मानने लगे हैं। जैसे :

- (a) I. He likes to completely cover the floor. II. He likes to cover the floor completely.
- (b) I. He tried to unduly alarm people. II. He tried to alarm people unduly.
- (c) I. The patient should try to, if possible, avoid going up and down stairs.
- II. If possible, the patient should try to avoid going up and down stairs.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में वाक्य II, वाक्य I से ज्यादा सही एवं सुन्दर लगता है। Split of Infinitives को avoid करना ही उचित है। As per modern grammarians one adverb may be inserted between the infinitive.

I ask you to kindly grant me one day leave only.

Here insertion of adverb 'kindly' is well accepted now-a-days.

Continuous Infinitive

जैसा कि पूर्व में बताया गया है Continuous Infinitive की form—**to be + Present Participle** होती है।

Ram may be watching TV at this time.

Use of Continuous Infinitive

- (A) Auxiliary Verbs के बाद will/shall/may/might/can/could/must/would/should के साथ Continuous Infinitive का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार होता है :
- (a) They'll be playing now.
 - (b) He might/may be watching T.V.
 - (c) He can't /couldn't be playing.
 - (d) He can't /couldn't be watching T.V.
(The field is occupied by the election team.)
(Because the cable operators are on strike.)
 - (e) She must be coming by morning train.
 - (f) She shouldn't be reading a magazine.
 - (g) She should be reading her text books.
 - (h) They would be waiting for us.
- (B) Verbs, appear, happen, pretend, seem के साथ सामान्यतया continuous infinitive का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :
- (a) I happened to be looking towards the road when the car stopped.
 - (b) She seems to be following us.
 - (c) He appears to be living in that area.
 - (d) He pretended to be looking for a magazine.



Continuous infinitive का प्रयोग verb, agree, arrange, decide, determine, hope, manage, plan के साथ भी किया जा सकता है। जैसे :

(a) I hope to be earning my living in a year's time.

(b) I determined to be waiting at the door.

(c) I agreed to be standing near the tree.

Perfect Infinitive

जैसा कि पूर्व में बताया गया है Perfect Infinitive की form—**to have+ Past Participle** जैसे : to have gone, to have completed होती है।

Use of Perfect Infinitive

- (1) Auxiliary Verbs के साथ Perfect Infinitive का प्रयोग : was/were के साथ Perfect Infinitive का प्रयोग एक unfulfilled Plan या arrangement को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- (a) The house was to have been ready so far. (But it is not ready.)
 - (b) She was to have gone. (But she has not gone.)

- (2) Should/would/might/could के साथ Perfect Infinitive का प्रयोग Conditional sentence में किया जाता है। जैसे :
- If I had seen him, I would have invited him.
 - If he had come to me, I might have helped him.
 - If she had informed, I could have helped her.
- ये सभी वाक्य, कार्य पूर्ण न होने को व्यक्त करते हैं।
- (3) may/ might के साथ Perfect Infinitive का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे :
- He may/might have heard the news so far.
(It is possible that he has heard the news by now.)
यह कार्य पूर्ण होने की Probability को व्यक्त करता है।
- (4) Must के साथ Perfect Infinitive का प्रयोग एक निश्चितता (Certainty) को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
- The thief must have entered through this gate. (Here are his footprints.)
- (5) Needn't के साथ Perfect Infinitive का प्रयोग एक ऐसे Past action को व्यक्त करता है जिसकी आवश्यकता नहीं थी। जैसे :
- He needn't have watered the plants.
(As it rained a day before.)
 - You needn't have written him.
(As I had telephonic discussions with him yesterday.)



verbs; appear, hope, pretend, seem का प्रयोग perfect infinitives के साथ निम्न प्रकार होता है :

- He pretended to have learned the lesson.
- He seemed to have been a great sportsman.
- I happened to have driven that kind of jeep before.
- He hopes that he will have finished his project by January.

निम्न Verbs के साथ perfect Infinitive का प्रयोग Passive Voice में किया जाता है।

ये Verbs हैं acknowledge, believe, consider, find, how, know, report, say, suppose, think, understand.

- They are understood to have left the village.
- He was believed to have a great artist.
- She is thought to have information which will be useful to the police.
- She is known to have been a great leader.

Perfect Continuous Infinitive

Perfect Continuous Infinitive की form—**to have been + Present Participle** होती है।

Use of Perfect Continuous Infinitive

The perfect continuous infinitive का प्रयोग verbs; appear, seem, happen, pretend के बाद किया जा सकता है। जैसे :

- He seems to have been standing there since morning.
- She appears to have been waiting for a long time.
- He pretended to have been studying.



TEST YOURSELF Exercises

01

Correct the following sentences :

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) English is difficult to be learnt. | (2) Do you dare refuse me? |
| (3) I watched her to cross the road. | (4) The act is easy to be performed. |
| (5) He is better able to act than to sing. | (6) She can do nothing but to abuse him. |
| (7) Stop to write. | (8) I had sooner run than to walk. |
| (9) I have decided helping her. | (10) Better to reign in hell than to serve in heaven. |
| (11) I made him to polish my shoes. | (12) She avoids to do her duties seriously. |
| (13) I am looking forward to meet you soon. | (14) I got a mechanic repairing my car. |
| (15) A brave man does not fear dying. | (16) The river is very deep to be crossed by the army. |

02

Correct the following sentences :

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) Please tell me to close it. | (2) I know swim. |
| (3) I can't decide to get out of this trouble. | (4) I chanced meeting her in the art gallery. |
| (5) She appears recognising me. | (6) Could you tell me to explain the situation? |
| (7) There was no board to write. | (8) She hopes of passing with distinction. |
| (9) She is eager to meeting me. | (10) He went to Jaipur seeing the Jantar Mantar. |
| (11) She failed winning the prize. | (12) I shall be glad meeting you. |

03

Correct the following sentences :

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| (1) I have no pen to write. | (2) She has a house for furnishing. |
| (3) I have no house to live. | (4) He requested me going to Jaipur. |
| (5) He did nothing but to talk and to laugh. | (6) I will have you to remember me. |
| (7) She was known having hidden the jewellery box. | |
| (8) I would study rather than to waste my time. | |
| (9) They bade me to go. | (10) Let I sing a song. |
| (11) I observed him to play. | (12) We had him to know his mistakes. |

04

Correct the following sentences :

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) He learned to operate the machine. | |
| (2) I asked him from where to buy shirts at reasonable rates. | |
| (3) I wonder whether go or not. | |
| (4) She pretended to look for some eatables. | |
| (5) Ramesh seems to follow us in his car. | (6) He seemed to be a great musician. |
| (7) His plan of rebuild the building was not approved by the municipality. | |
| (8) He made an effort to getting pass without copying. | |
| (9) She is too weak that she cannot walk. | (10) She is enough matured to go alone. |
| (11) She ran enough fast to catch the train. | (12) He was so foolish as left his car unlocked. |
| (13) Will you be so kind as sanction my leave? | (14) She is the only one secure 95% marks. |
| (15) She likes to completely change the colour. | |

**SOLUTIONS****TEST YOURSELF Exercises****Solution TYE 01**

- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) English is difficult to learn. | (2) Do you dare to refuse me? |
| (3) I watched her cross the road. | (4) The act is easy to perform. |
| (5) He is better able to act than sing. | (6) She can do nothing but abuse him. |
| (7) Stop writing. | (8) I had sooner run than walk. |
| (9) I have decided to help her. | (10) Better reign in hell than serve in heaven. |
| (11) I made him polish my shoes. | (12) She avoids doing her duties seriously. |
| (13) I am looking forward meeting you soon. | (14) I got a mechanic to repair my car. |
| (15) A brave man does not fear to die. | (16) The river is very deep to cross by the army. |

Solution TYE 02

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) Please tell me how to close it. | (2) I know how to swim. |
| (3) I can't decide how to get out of this trouble. | (4) I chanced to meet her in the art gallery. |
| (5) She appears to recognise me. | (6) Could you tell me how to explain the situation? |
| (7) There was no board to write on. | (8) She hopes to pass with distinction. |
| (9) She is eager to meet me. | (10) He went to Jaipur to see the Jantar Mantar. |
| (11) She failed to win the prize. | (12) I shall be glad to meet you. |

Solution TYE 03

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| (1) I have no pen to write with. | (2) She has a house to furnish. |
| (3) I have no house to live in. | (4) He requested me to go to Jaipur. |
| (5) He did nothing but talk and laugh. | (6) I will have you remember me. |
| (7) She was known to have hidden the jewellery box. | |
| (8) I would study rather than waste my time. | (9) They bade me go. |
| (10) Let me sing a song. | (11) I observed him playing. |
| (12) We had him know his mistakes. | |

Solution TYE 04

- (1) He learned how to operate the machine.
- (2) I asked him where to buy shirts at reasonable rates.
- (3) I wonder whether to go or not.
- (4) She pretended to be looking for some eatables.
- (5) Ramesh seems to be following us in his car.
- (6) He seemed to have been a great musician.
- (7) His plan to rebuild the building was not approved by the municipality.
- (8) He made an effort to get pass without copying.
- (9) She is too weak to walk.
- (10) She is matured enough to go alone.
- (11) She ran fast enough to catch the train.
- (12) He was so foolish as to leave his car unlocked.
- (13) Will you be so kind as to sanction my leave?
- (14) She is the only one to secure 95% marks.
- (15) She likes to change the colour completely.

PARTICIPLE

Participle, verb का ऐसा रूप है जिसमें verb के साथ-साथ Adjective के गुण भी पाए जाते हैं, Participle को इसीलिए Verbal adjective भी कहा जाता है।

Participle तीन प्रकार के होते हैं :

Participle		
Present Participle (Verb + ing) (Running, singing, walking)	Past Participle (verb + d/ed/t) (talked, burnt, hurt)	Perfect Participle (having + Past Perfect) (having done, having seen, having spent)

Forms of Participle				
Active Voice		Passive Voice		
Present (playing)	Perfect (having played)	Present (being played)	Past (played)	Perfect (having been played)

- (1) **Present Participle:** Verb की I form के साथ ing जोड़ने से Present Participle बनता है। जैसे :
 (a) It is an interesting novel. (b) He jumped from a running train.
 (c) It was a tiring journey.
- (2) **Past Participle:** इसके द्वारा कार्य का Past में पूरा होना व्यक्त किया जाता है। जैसे: burnt, selected, stricken etc.
 (a) The owner gave a written notice to the tenant.
 (b) A burnt child dreads the fire.
 (c) Driven by hunger, he begged for food.
- (3) **Perfect Participle** के द्वारा एक कार्य के समाप्त होने के बाद दूसरे कार्य के शुरू होने या पूर्ण होने को व्यक्त किया जाता है। सामान्यतया एक वाक्य में दो घटनाओं के मध्य सम्बन्ध (Relation) Perfect Participle द्वारा स्पष्ट किया जाता है। जैसे :
 Having finished, Having written, Having done, Having seen
 (Having + Past Participle = Perfect Participle)
 Passive Voice में Perfect Participle = having been + Past Participle द्वारा बनता है। जैसे :
 having been failed, having been completed.
 (a) Having finished my project, I went to play.
 (b) Having been failed in BA, he joined the parental business.

Present Participle : Use

(A) इसका प्रयोग Continuous Tense में निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है:

- (i) He is playing football. (ii) They have been reading for an hour.
(iii) Sita was watching T.V.

(B) इसका प्रयोग एक Adjective की तरह भी किया जाता है। जैसे:

- (i) It was a tiring journey. (ii) I read an interesting novel.

(C) Have + Object के साथ Present Participle का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार होता है:

- (i) I will have you swimming within a week.
(As a result of my efforts you will be swimming within a week).
(ii) We had them all dancing.
(We persuaded them to dance).
(iii) I have them both speaking to one another.
(I persuaded or encouraged them to speak to one another).
(iv) If you give such cocktail parties, you will have the neighbours complaining.
(v) If celebrities put their numbers in telephone directories, they'd have everyone ringing them up.

(D) I won't + have + Object + Present Participle का प्रयोग 'I won't / don't allow this' के अर्थ में किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) I won't have them playing cricket in my garden.
(b) I won't have him cleaning his vehicles in the corridor.
(I won't / don't allow him to clean his vehicles in the corridor).

(E) Present Participle का प्रयोग Relative Pronoun + Verb के ऐवज में निम्न प्रकार किया जा सकता है:

- (a) There are many people who wish to visit the temple.
There are many people wishing to visit the temple.
(b) Please segregate the children who need immediate medical assistance.
Please segregate the children needing immediate medical assistance.

(F) Verbs of perception जैसे, see, hear, feel, smell, notice, watch, listen (to) इत्यादि के बाद object + present participle का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) I see her passing through the street daily. (b) I can hear the clock striking.
(c) I felt the car skidding. (d) I smelt something burning.
(e) I watched them breaking the wall. (f) Didn't you hear the clock striking?



(1) Verbs, See, Hear, Fell एवं कभी-कभी notice एवं Watch के साथ Object + Bare infinitive का भी प्रयोग प्रचलन में है। सामान्यतया, Infinitive का प्रयोग तब किया जाता है जब action पूर्ण हो जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) I saw her leave the college. (b) I saw him repair the car.

The use of infinitive implies that the action is complete.

जबकि Participle का प्रयोग कार्य के पूर्ण होने एवं पूर्ण न होने दोनों स्थिति को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :

I saw her repairing the car.

It could mean that I watched the whole action or that I saw only part of it.

The use of infinitive implies that the action is complete.

(2) Infinitive का प्रयोग एक के बाद दूसरे action की स्थिति में किया जाता है। जैसे :

I saw him enter the office, unlock the almirah, take out a file, photographed it, put it back and left in a hurry.

(G) Catch/find/leave के Present Participle का प्रयोग निम्न Structure में होता है। जैसे :

Catch/find/leave + Object + Present participle:

(i) Catch के साथ Present Participle का प्रयोग एक unfavourable/displeasing स्थिति को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :

- (a) I caught him stealing the purse.
- (b) If he catches you using his computer, he will be furious.

(ii) Find के साथ Present Participle का प्रयोग सामान्य स्थिति को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :

- (a) I found her waiting for me.
- (b) I found him standing at the gate.
- (c) We found a man lying on the road.

(iii) Leave का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार होता है:

- (a) I left her working in the office.
(She was working in the office when I left.)
- (b) I left him talking on phone.
(He was talking on phone when I left.)

(H) Present Participle का प्रयोग come / go / spend / waste / be busy के साथ निम्न प्रकार होता है:

- (a) We are going shopping today afternoon.
- (b) They are going sailing.
- (c) Come dancing.
- (d) They are going skiing.
- (e) He spent a huge amount modernizing his old house.
- (f) They wasted five hours trying to find the solution to this problem.
- (g) I spend four hours a day travelling.
- (h) She doesn't spend much time cooking her meal.
- (i) She was busy writing lessons.
- (j) She was busy packing.

(I) Other Uses of Present Participle

(a) जब एक ही कर्ता (Subject Same) द्वारा दो कार्य एक साथ (Simultaneously) किये जाते हैं तो एक कार्य हेतु Present Participle का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार किया जा सकता है :

- (i) She went away.
- (ii) She cried as she went.
She went away crying.
- (iii) She holds the rope with one hand and stretches out the other to the man in the water.
इस वाक्य को Present participle का प्रयोग करते हुए निम्न प्रकार लिखा जा सकता है
Holding the rope with one hand she stretches out the other to the man in the water.

(b) जब एक ही कर्ता द्वारा एक कार्य के पूर्ण होने के साथ ही दूसरा कार्य शुरू किया जाता है तो प्रथम कार्य हेतु Present Participle का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है। जैसे :

- (i) He opened the almirah. He took out a file.
Opening the almirah he took out a file.
- (ii) He takes off his clothes and creeps cautiously into the water.
Taking off his clothes he creeps cautiously into the water.

- (c) यदि दूसरा कार्य, पहले कार्य का ही एक भाग है या इसका परिणाम है तो दूसरे कार्य को Present Participle द्वारा व्यक्त किया जा सकता है। जैसे :
- He went out slamming the gate.
 - He fired, wounding several persons in the crowd.
 - I fell, striking my head against the wall and cutting it.
- (यहाँ तीन actions में से, पीछे वाले दो actions, Present participle द्वारा व्यक्त किए गए हैं।)
- (D) Present Participle का प्रयोग As/since/because से शुरू होने वाली clause (Subordinate clause) के स्थान पर निम्न प्रकार किया जा सकता है:
- As he was a student he was interested in books.
Being a student he was interested in books.
 - Because he was ill he didn't go to Jaipur.
Being ill he didn't go to Jaipur.
 - Since, he knew that he wouldn't be able to recognize her, he used an addressed plate.
Knowing that he wouldn't be able to recognize her he used an addressed plate.
- (E) एक ही वाक्य में एक से अधिक Participles का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार से किया जा सकता है:
- Realizing that he hadn't enough money and not wanting to borrow from his friends, he decided to sell his chain.
 - Not knowing the language and having no friends in the city, he found it hard to get a room on rent.



We should not use a Present participle to express an action which is not consistent with the action of the principal clause.

He sailed for Srilanka on Tuesday and arriving their on Saturday.

Incorrect

He sailed for Srilanka on Tuesday and arrived their on Saturday.

Correct

Here 'sailed' is used in principal clause, so we cannot use 'arriving' in subordinating clause. We should use 'arrived'.

Past Participle—Use

- (1) As Adjective: Past Participle का प्रयोग Adjective की तरह किया जाता है। जैसे :
- This is a fried fish.
 - A burnt child dreads the fire.
 - I need a boiled egg.
 - Police wanted a written statement.



कुछ Past participles का प्रयोग adjectives की तरह ही होता है, verb की past form की तरह नहीं होता है। ऐसे, Past participles हैं : drunken, bounden, stricken, shrunk, sunken, molten, shorn, cloven, graven. ऐसे past participles, noun को quality करते हैं। जैसे:

A drunken driven, cloven hoof, graven image, stricken heart, sunken ship, shorn sheep, bounden duty.

इन verb की past form, past participle से भिन्न होती है। जैसे:

Drunken-Drunk, Molten-Melted, bounden-bound, shorn-sheared, cloven-clove, graven- graved, stricken-struck, sunken-sunk.

- (2) Past Participle का प्रयोग Perfect Tense में किया जाता है। जैसे :
- Ram has arrived.
 - They have completed the work.
 - I have finished my work.
 - He had gone to Jaipur.

(3) Past participles का प्रयोग अधिकांशतया passive voice में करते हैं। Past participle का प्रयोग Noun के बाद होता है। जैसे :

- (a) This is the book written by me.
- (b) Learn the lessons taught by her.
- (c) He can't forget the favour shown to him.

लेकिन कुछ past participles जैसे: born, broken, fallen, given, spoken, stolen, torn, written का प्रयोग verb एवं adjective दोनों प्रकार से किया जा सकता है।

- (a) This is the broken glass.
- (b) That is the window broken by the thief.
- (c) Police wanted a written statement.
- (d) Where is the letter written by her?

(4) Past Participle का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार के Passive वाक्यों के स्थान पर भी किया जा सकता है। जैसे :

- (a) She was aroused by the noise and leapt to her feet.
Aroused by the noise she leapt to her feet.
- (b) The railway bridge had been weakened by successive storms and was no longer safe.
Weakened by successive storms, the railway bridge was no longer safe.

Perfect Participle—Use

(A) जब एक ही कर्ता द्वारा एक कार्य के तुरन्त बाद दूसरा कार्य किया जाता है। तो Present Participle की जगह Perfect Participle का भी प्रयोग किया जा सकता है। जैसे :

- (i) Tying one end of the rope to the grill of the door, she threw the other end out of the window.
Having tied one end of the rope to the grill of the door, she threw the other end out of the window.
- (ii) Opening the almirah, he took out a file.
Having opened the almirah, he took out a file.



जब Present Participle के प्रयोग से वाक्य का आशय स्पष्ट न हो तो Perfect Participle का प्रयोग करना उचित रहता है।

(B) जब दोनों कार्यों के बीच समय का अन्तराल हो तो Perfect Participle का ही प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (a) Having failed thrice, she didn't want to apply again.
- (b) Having passed his M.A., he enrolled for Ph. D.

(C) Perfect Participle का प्रयोग उस स्थिति में किया जाता है जब प्रथम कार्य एक समयावधि को व्यक्त करता है। जैसे :
Having been his own boss for many years, he found it unusual to accept orders from another.



Perfect Participle Passive (Having been + Past Participle) का प्रयोग तब किया जाता है, जब Participle द्वारा व्यक्त कार्य, दूसरे Verb द्वारा व्यक्त कार्य के पूर्व पूर्ण होता है।

- (a) Having been failed thrice, she didn't try again.
- (b) Having been warned about the bandits they deposited the valuables in the lockers.
- (c) Having been bitten twice, the courier man refused to deliver the goods unless the dog is chained up.

Errors in the Use of Participles

छात्रों द्वारा Participles के प्रयोग में बहुत गलतियाँ की जाती हैं। परीक्षा में Participles से सम्बन्धित प्रश्न अधिकांशतया निम्न से सम्बन्धित होते हैं :

- (I) **Unattached or Dangling Participle** : Participle वाक्यों में Adjective का कार्य करते हैं। अतः Participle के साथ एक noun या pronoun का सम्बन्धित (related) होना आवश्यक है। यदि Participle के साथ कोई noun या pronoun सम्बन्धित नहीं है तो वह Participle, Unattached or Dangling Participle है। जैसे :

(1) Being a cold morning I didn't go to office. (2) Being a rainy day, the school remained closed.
उपरोक्त दोनों वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त Participle—'Being' Unattached Participle है, यहाँ Being के साथ कोई noun या Pronoun लगाना आवश्यक है। अतः इन वाक्यों को निम्न प्रकार लिखा जाना चाहिए।

- (1) It being a cold morning I didn't go to office. Or
The morning being cold, I didn't go to office.
(2) It being a rainy day, the school remained closed. Or
The day being rainy, the school remained closed.

- (II) **Misrelated Participle** : कई Participle वाले वाक्यों के दो भाग होते हैं। एक भाग में Participle होता है। जब Participle वाले भाग में कोई Subject नहीं है, तो दूसरे भाग के Subject को ही participle का Subject माना जाता है। यहाँ यह ध्यान रखना आवश्यक है कि यदि वाक्य के दोनों भागों का Subject एक ही है तो वाक्य सही होगा। यदि वाक्य के दोनों भागों में अलग-अलग Subject की आवश्यकता है एवं Participle वाले भाग में Subject नहीं दिया गया है तो यह वाक्य एक गलत (Incorrect) वाक्य होगा। यह misrelated Participle का उदाहरण है। जैसे:

Standing near the gate, a dog caught her.

इस वाक्य के दो भाग हैं, पहला Standing near the gate इसका कोई Subject नहीं है। एक भाग दूसरे a dog caught her, इसका Subject-dog है। यदि dog को ही पहले भाग का Subject माना जाये तो इसका अर्थ होगा कि Dog was standing near the gate जो कि गलत होगा। अतः यहाँ Standing एक Misrelated Participle है। सही वाक्य होगा:
While she was standing near the gate, a dog caught her.

See more such sentences:

- (a) Waiting for the train, a brick fell on my feet. *Incorrect*
While I was waiting for the train, a brick fell on my feet. *Correct*
(b) When using this machine it must be remembered to unlock it first. *Incorrect*
When using this machine, you must remember to unlock it first. *Correct*
(c) Deciding to join the navy, the recruiter happily pumped Jack's hand. *Incorrect*
(The recruiter is not deciding to join the navy; Jack is).
The recruiter happily pumped Jack's hand after learning that Jack had decided to join the navy. *Correct*
(d) When watching films, commercials are especially irritating. *Incorrect*
(a) *One option would be to change the subject so that it names the actor that the modifier implies :*
(i) When watching films, I find commercials especially irritating.
(b) *Another option would be to turn the modifier into a word group that includes the actor :*
(ii) When I am watching films, commercials are especially irritating.
Both (i) and (ii) are correct.

Important : लेकिन कुछ participles—Considering, regarding, concerning, taking, speaking, touching इत्यादि का प्रयोग बिना Noun/pronoun से सम्बन्धित (related) हुए भी किया जा सकता है। जैसे :

- (a) Considering the price, the quality of the cloth is good.
(b) Speaking roughly, the distance between Delhi and Alwar is 150 kms.
(c) Taking every point into consideration, the proposal is very attractive.

Participles का इस तरह से प्रयोग एक preposition की भाँति होता है।

How to Detect Errors?

- (A) ध्यान रखें कि Participle के साथ एक Subject का attached/related (सम्बन्धित) होना आवश्यक है। जब किसी वाक्य में एक Clause से Participle का प्रयोग किया हुआ हो तो इस Participle से पूर्व दूसरे Clause में उपलब्ध Subject को लगाकर देखें। यदि उस Subject के साथ यह Participle सही अर्थ देता है, तो Participle का सही प्रयोग किया गया है, अन्यथा वाक्य में गलती है। निम्न उदाहरण देखें :

Walking through the jungle, he saw a white tiger.

इस वाक्य में Walking एक Participle है इसके साथ कोई Subject नहीं है। वाक्य के दूसरे Clause में 'he' Subject है। इसे Participle से पूर्व लगाने पर 'he' walking (while he was walking) बनता है। जिसका अर्थ सही निकलता है। अतः Participle का सही प्रयोग किया गया है।

Walking towards the gate, a plate slipped from his hand.

इस वाक्य में 'Walking' Participle है। इसके साथ कोई Subject नहीं है। अतः दूसरे Clause के Subject 'plate' को इसके पूर्व लगाने पर a plate walking towards the gate (While a plate walking towards the gate.) बनता है, जिसका कोई सही अर्थ नहीं निकलता है। अतः Participle के प्रयोग में गलती है। यहाँ Participle का Subject, plate नहीं हो सकता है। वाक्य के दूसरे Clause को भी देखने से पता चलता है कि वाक्य को निम्न अर्थ देने का प्रयास किया गया है:

“जब वह दरवाजे की तरफ चल रहा था तो एक प्लेट उसके हाथ से छूट गई।”

इस अर्थ को पूर्णता देने हेतु, अर्थ स्पष्ट करने हेतु, वाक्य को निम्न प्रकार लिखा जाना चाहिए:

While he was walking towards the gate, a plate slipped from his hand.

अब यह वाक्य सही है।

Being a rainy day, he didn't go to the office.

यहाँ Being (Participle) के साथ प का प्रयोग करें, तो He being a rainy day, एक अर्थहीन वाक्य बनता है। चूँकि rain, day, weather, time इत्यादि हेतु 'it' (Introductory Subject) का प्रयोग किया जाता है अतः Being से पूर्व it लगाने से वाक्य सही बन जाता है एवं उसका सही अर्थ निकलता है। जैसे :

It being a rainy day, he didn't go to the office.

- (B) कई बार परीक्षा में Active एवं Passive के साथ Participle के प्रयोग के सन्दर्भ में प्रश्न पूछे जाते हैं। जहाँ Active का प्रयोग किया जाना चाहिए वहाँ Passive का प्रयोग करके प्रश्न हल किया जाता है। निम्न उदाहरण देखें:

Having been taken lunch, he went to office.

यहाँ been का प्रयोग अनावश्यक/गलत किया गया है। यह Passive Structure में है। इसका अर्थ यह हुआ 'लंच खिलाये जाने के बाद, वह ऑफिस गया' जबकि वाक्य का आशय है 'लंच लेने के बाद वह ऑफिस गया।' अतः इसे निम्न प्रकार लिखा जाना चाहिए

Having taken lunch, he went to office.

Having deserted by his wife, he became a hermit.

इस वाक्य में Having के बाद been का प्रयोग करना आवश्यक है। इस वाक्य में 'Having' का प्रयोग Participle की तरह हुआ है जिसके साथ Subject 'he' का प्रयोग करने पर 'he having deserted by his wife' बनता है जिसका कोई सही अर्थ नहीं निकलता है। यहाँ Participle का प्रयोग Passive में होना आवश्यक है। अतः यहाँ Having been का प्रयोग करने पर:

Having been deserted by his wife, he became a hermit.

(अर्थात् पत्नी द्वारा छोड़ देने पर वह संन्यासी बन गया) यह Participle का सही प्रयोग है।

Likewise : The sun having been risen, the fog dispersed.

The sun having risen, the fog dispersed.

Incorrect

Correct



TEST YOURSELF Exercises

01

Correct the following sentences :

- (1) Being Sunday, I am thinking to go to a movie.
- (2) Remember the lessons teach by the teacher.
- (3) Where is the book wrote by Mr. Gupta?
- (4) Ploughing his fields some old statues were found.
- (5) I want a wrote complaint.
- (6) There is no drink water in the office.
- (7) Having satisfied with his reply, I didn't take any action.
- (8) Tired, I couldn't work any more.
- (9) Left from hand to mouth, he yet maintains his standard of living.
- (10) Having referred to your application, I beg to write.....

02

Correct the following sentences :

- (1) In regard to my qualification, I beg to submit.
- (2) Sleeping in the house, a thief entered their house.
- (3) Having injured he went to hospital.
- (4) Turn to the left you can see the palace.
- (5) Walking in the forest a lion was seen.
- (6) Don't get off a ran bus.
- (7) The ship has sunken.
- (8) Having been worked hard he got tired.
- (9) Having opened the drawer she took out a knife.
- (10) We must provide good education to grow children.

03

Fill in the blanks with correct form of non- finite verbs : (Infinitive/Gerund/ Participle) :

- (1) His speech left me (to think/thought/thinking)
- (2) Some boys like the T.V. (to watch/watch)
- (3) Sita is good at (swim/swimming/to swim)
- (4) I had an aversion meet. (to eat/ to eating)
- (5) It is wrong a lie before the judge at least. (to tell/telling/have told)
- (6) He had rather than beg. (to starve/starve/starved)
- (7) My greatest pleasure is while alone. (singing/to sing/sung)
- (8) He wears a look today. (worrying/worried/to worry)
- (9) You had better nothing. (to say/saying/say/said)
- (10) is a good exercise for the young. (to swim/swimming)

04

Fill in the blanks with correct form of non- finite verbs (Infinitive/Gerund/Participle)

- (1) I watched her and come often. (going/go /to go)
- (2) is easier than reading. (to play/having played/playing)
- (3) I found his daughter (to cry/crying/have cried)
- (4) She denied any force to get him accept his fault. (used/to use/using)
- (5) I hate and cheating. (to lie/lying)
- (6) He said, "He has given up" (to smoke/smoking/have smoked)

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| (7) I remember her in the park. | (seeing/to see) |
| (8) She stopped others. | (to advise/advising/had advised) |
| (9) They want us for the girls to arrive. | (waiting/to wait) |
| (10) many times, he doesn't want to try again now. | (Failing/Failed/Having failed) |
| (11) that she was early, she went to meet her friends. | (To know/Having know/Knowing) |
| (12) The book on the chair is mine. | (lye/lying) |
| (13) Please excuse my early today. | (leave/left/leaving) |
| (14) She disliked my on Sunday. | (work/working). |
| (15) out of the window, she saw a strange creature. | (Looked/Looking/Having looked) |

05

Read the following sentences to find whether there is any error in any part :

- (1) Being often ill (a)/ and frequently absent (b)/ she had no opportunity to complete his work (c)/ or do much of it toto. (d)
- (2) Taking breakfast (a)/ he went to the office (b)/ and ordered the staff (c)/ to complete the work without any further delay. (d)
- (3) Without taking proper care (a)/ the doctors would (b)/ not have been saved (c)/ the life of this patient. (d)
- (4) Going towards the gate (a)/ with a cup of tea (b)/ somebody switched off (c)/ the light. (d)
- (5) He does nothing (a)/ nothing but to find faults (b)/ with others (c)/ and laugh at them. (d)
- (6) The Chief Minister (a) should not let (b)/ the terrorist activities (c)/ to grow in our state. (d)
- (7) Many persons are coming (a)/ to his concert (b)/ to hear him to sing (c)/ the religious songs. (d)
- (8) Having had reached (a)/ the station, you (b)/ may make a telephone (c)/ to your boss. (d)
- (9) It is better to stay (a)/ at home than to go to market (b)/ when it is raining. (c)
- (10) When he entered the home (a)/ he found the child sleeping (b)/ and the fan moves slowly. (c)
- (11) He asked me to (a)/ completely forget her (b)/ but only I know it is not possible. (c)

**SOLUTIONS****TEST YOURSELF Exercises****Solution TYE 01**

- (1) It being Sunday, I am thinking to go to a movie.
- (2) Remember the lessons taught by the teacher.
- (3) Where is the book written by Mr. Gupta?
- (4) While ploughing his fields he found some old statues.
- (5) I want a written complaint.
- (6) There is no drinking water in the office.
- (7) Having been satisfied with his reply, I didn't take any action.
- (8) Being tired, I couldn't work any more.
- (9) Living from hand to month, he yet maintains his standard of living.
- (10) Referring to your application, I beg to write....

Solution TYE 02

- (1) Regarding my qualification I beg to submit.
- (2) While they were sleeping in the house, a thief entered their house.
- (3) Having been injured he went to hospital.
- (4) Turning to the left you can see the palace.
- (5) While, I was walking in the forest I saw a lion.
- (6) Don't get off a running bus.
- (7) The ship has sunk.
- (8) Having worked hard he got tired.
- (9) Opening the drawer she took out a knife.
- (10) We must provide good education to growing children.

Solution TYE 03

- | | | | | |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| (1) thinking, | (2) to watch, | (3) swimming, | (4) to eating, | (5) to tell, |
| (6) starve, | (7) to sing, | (8) worried, | (9) say, | (10) Swimming. |

Solution TYE 04

- | | | | | |
|---------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|---------------------|
| (1) go, | (2) Playing, | (3) crying, | (4) using, | (5) lying, |
| (6) smoking, | (7) seeing, | (8) advising, | (9) to wait, | (10) Having failed, |
| (11) Knowing, | (12) lying, | (13) leaving, | (14) working, | (15) Looking. |

Solution TYE 05

- (1) (D) 'do' से पहले to का प्रयोग होगा। Or से पहले to complete है तो or के बाद भी 'to do' आयेगा।
- (2) (A) After taking breakfast या Having taken breakfast लिखा जायेगा।
- (3) (C) been का प्रयोग गलत है।
- (4) (A) While he was going towards the gate होगा।
- (5) (B) Nothing but के बाद to का प्रयोग गलत है। जैसे :
He does nothing, but watch TV.
- (6) (D) 'to' हटाना होगा। let के बाद infinitive 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
- (7) (C) to sing की जगह केवल sing आयेगा। hear, see, make, know, feel के बाद infinitive 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे:
I see her walk.
I feel her presence.
- (8) (A) 'Had' का अनावश्यक प्रयोग किया जाता है।
- (9) (B) than के बाद 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे:
It is better to study than wander here and there.
- (10) (C) fan moving slowly होना चाहिए।
- (11) (B) Completely forget her की जगह forget her completely होगा। यहाँ infinitive को गलत split किया गया है।

GERUND

Gerund, verb की एक ऐसी form है जो verb में 'ing' (Verb + ing) लगाने से बनती है एवं noun का कार्य करती है। Gerund को verbal Noun भी कहते हैं।

"Gerund is such a form of verb, that ends in 'ing' and has the force of a noun and a verb"

—Wren and Martin

अर्थात् Gerund verb में ing जोड़ने से बनता है एवं वाक्य में noun का कार्य भी करता है। जैसे : Walking, Running, Reading, Writing etc.

Present Participle V/s Gerund

Present Participle एवं Gerund का रूप एक जैसा होता है, लेकिन जहाँ Gerund वाक्य में एक Verb + noun का कार्य करता है। वहाँ Participle; verb + adjective का कार्य करता है। Gerund को Verbal Noun तथा Participle को Verbal Adjective कहते हैं।

Gerund V/s Simple Infinitive

Gerund वाक्यों में Verb + Noun (Verbal Noun) की तरह function करता है, इसी प्रकार Simple Infinitive जिसे Noun Infinitive भी कहते हैं, वह भी वाक्य में verb + noun का कार्य करता है। इसी कारण से बहुत से वाक्यों में (With certain verbs) Gerund या Simple Infinitive किसी का भी प्रयोग किया जा सकता है। ऐसा करने से वाक्य के अर्थ में कोई अन्तर नहीं आता है। निम्न verb के साथ Gerund या Infinitive किसी का भी प्रयोग किया जा सकता है:

advise	hate	propose	used to
agree	intend	recommend	want
allow	like	regret	ashamed
	love	remember	afraid
can/could bear	mean	require	sorry
cease	need	start	go
continue	permit	stop	prefer
forget	try		

Gerund

- They began playing.
- We prefer taking tea.
- He never ceased complaining about the quality.
- I can't bear waiting so long.
- I intend buying it.
- He advised me writing today.
- He doesn't allow parking here.

Infinitive

- They began to play.
- We prefer to take tea.
- He never ceased to complain about quality.
- I can't bear to wait so long.
- I intend to buy it.
- He advised me to write today.
- He doesn't allow us to park here.

Some Specific Uses of Gerund/Infinitive

(A) Be afraid of : Be afraid of + Gerund + Noun / pronoun :

(a) She never swam far out. She is afraid of getting caught.

(b) I didn't tell her because I was afraid of upsetting her.

Be afraid के साथ Gerund का प्रयोग कर्ता के भय को व्यक्त करता है।

Be afraid + Infinitive

(a) I was afraid to jump (so I didn't jump). (b) He was afraid to complain (so he didn't complain.)

इस तरह का प्रयोग (Be afraid + Infinitive) कर्ता के भयाक्रांत होने को व्यक्त करता है, जिसके कारण उसने वह कार्य ही नहीं किया (Too frightened to perform an action.)

(B) Be sorry for + gerund :

I am sorry for making such a noise in the morning.

Gerund का प्रयोग सामान्यतया पिछले action के साथ किया जाता है। यद्यपि Immediate action हेतु भी Gerund का प्रयोग हो सकता है। जैसे :

I am sorry for disturbing you.

लेकिन यहाँ Infinitive का प्रयोग अधिक उपयुक्त माना जाता है।

I am sorry to disturb you.

I am sorry thatका प्रयोग वास्तविक खेद (Regret) या दुःख (Sadness) व्यक्त करता है।

जैसे : I am sorry that you failed this time again.

जबकि : I am sorry to say that he has not arrived yet.

इस तरह के वाक्य औपचारिकता के रूप में खेद व्यक्त करते हैं।

(C) Be ashamed of + Gerund : You must be ashamed of lying to me. Ashamed of के साथ Gerund का प्रयोग past action हेतु किया जाता है। जैसे :

I am ashamed to tell you what this table cost.

Would be के साथ ashamed + Infinitive का प्रयोग कर्ता को भविष्य में किसी कार्य को करने से रोकता है। जैसे :

I would be ashamed to refuse her.

I would be ashamed to ask for help.

(D) Go on का अर्थ होता है continue करना। इसका प्रयोग सामान्यतया Gerund के साथ किया जाता है। लेकिन verbs; explain, talk, tell इत्यादि के साथ Go on का प्रयोग Infinitive के साथ होता है। जैसे :

He went on to talk about his accident.

He went on to tell us about the present situation of unemployment.

(E) Regret, Remember, Forget : इन verbs के साथ Gerund का प्रयोग सामान्यतया तब किया जाता है जब Gerund द्वारा किसी Earlier action के बारे में बताया गया हो। जैसे :

(a) I regret abusing you last night. (Abusing the first action, regret is the second.)

(b) I remember reading about this invention in a magazine.

(reading is the first action and remember is the second.)

Forget के साथ Gerund का प्रयोग सामान्यतया Negative होता है। जैसे :

(a) I will never forget waiting for her so long.

(b) We will never forget waiting for the robbers to come.

लेकिन जब Regret, Remember एवं Forget द्वारा Earlier action के बारे में बताया जाये तो Infinitive का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

(a) I regret to inform you that you have again failed this time.

(यहाँ regret प्रथम (earlier) action तथा Inform करना द्वितीय action है)

(b) I will remember to post the letter.

(यहाँ भी remember प्रथम (earlier) action तथा letter post करना द्वितीय (subsequent) action है।)

(c) I often forget to write my address.

(यहाँ भी Forget, earlier action तथा write, subsequent action है)

(F) Advise, Allow, Permit, Recommend : उक्त verbs के साथ वाक्य में जब सम्बन्धित व्यक्ति का जिक्र किया जाता है तो Infinitive का प्रयोग होता है। लेकिन यदि सम्बन्धित व्यक्ति का सन्दर्भ वाक्य में नहीं हो तो Gerund का प्रयोग होगा। जैसे :

(a) He advised me to leave at once.

He advised leaving at once.

(b) She recommends us to buy this soap.

She recommends buying this soap.



Allow एवं permit के साथ Gerund का प्रयोग करते समय object नहीं लगता है। अतः यदि object लगता है तो Infinitive का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे :

(a) He allowed me to use the scooter.

(b) They allowed us to play there.

(c) He doesn't allow swimming there.

(d) They do not permit playing there.

(G) Agree, Agree to :

Agree के साथ Infinitive का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :

(a) He agreed to wait a month.

(b) They agreed to accommodate us.

Agree to (preposition) के साथ Gerund का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार से होता है :

(a) She agreed to my leaving early.

(b) He agreed to my coming late for a week.

Use of Gerund

(1) As subject (कर्ता के रूप में) :

(a) Swimming is good for health.

(b) Seeing is believing .

(c) Fishing is a good profession.

उपरोक्त वाक्यों में Swimming, Seeing एवं Fishing (Gerunds) का प्रयोग वाक्य के Subject के रूप में हुआ है।

(2) As object of a verb (क्रिया के कर्म के रूप में) :

(a) I love fishing.

(b) He loves telling stories.

(c) Stop shouting.

यहाँ Gerunds fishing, telling एवं shouting verbs के objects हैं।

(3) As object of a preposition (Preposition के object के रूप में) :

(a) He is fond of writing letters.

(b) We are tired of waiting.

(c) I am against speaking ill of others.

इन वाक्यों में Gerunds: writing, preposition, of का object है तथा waiting एवं Speaking क्रमशः preposition; of एवं against के objects हैं।

(4) As complement of a verb (verb के पूरक के रूप में) :

(a) What I love is making friends !

(b) His weakness is writing slowly.

(c) What I hate is abusing others !

यहाँ Gerund के बिना verb अपूर्ण है। अतः Gerund, verb के पूरक की तरह प्रयुक्त हुए हैं।

(5) As an objective complement (object के पूरक के रूप में) :

(a) It was foolish of him crying now.

(b) It is worthless requesting to him.

(c) It is no use running after her.

यहाँ Gerund का प्रयोग objective complement की तरह किया है।

Specific Use of Gerund Rules

Rule 1

जब वाक्यों में verb, preposition के तुरन्त बाद आती है, तो Gerund का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| (a) He is fond of fishing. | (b) She is good at swimming. |
| (c) He is too afraid of losing. | (d) I am tired of arguing. |
| (e) I felt cold after swimming. | (f) I am sorry for telling you all this. |
| (g) There is no point in arguing now. | (h) Are you not interested in making money? |

Rule 2

कुछ verbs + preposition / adverb combination के बाद Gerund का ही प्रयोग किया जाता है। ऐसी verbs हैं। care for, give up, keep on, look forward to, put off, see about, take to etc.

- (a) We do not care for standing in queues.
 (b) We are looking forward to meeting you in the party.
 (c) He has given up smoking since long.

Rule 3

‘to’ का प्रयोग जब preposition की तरह होता है तो उसके बाद gerund का प्रयोग किया जायेगा। ‘to’ का प्रयोग preposition की तरह हुआ है या नहीं इसको जानने के लिए उसके बाद noun या pronoun लगाकर देखें, यदि उसके बाद noun या pronoun लगाया जा सकता है तो ‘to’ का प्रयोग preposition की तरह हुआ है अन्यथा as part of Infinitive.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| (a) I am looking forward to meeting you. | (‘To’ used as preposition) |
| (b) I am accustomed to smoking. | (‘To’ used as preposition) |
| (c) I want to go there. | (‘To’ used as part of Infinitive) |
| (d) Will you like to come in? | (‘To’ used as part of Infinitive) |

Rule 4

निम्न verbs के बाद Gerund का ही सामान्यतया प्रयोग किया जाता है :

admit	keep (= continues)	anticipate	loathe
appreciate	mean (= involve)	consider	miss
avoid	mind (= object)	defer	pardon
dislike	propose (= suggest)	delay	postpone
enjoy	remember (= recollect)	deny	practise
detest	prevent	dread	recollect
escape	resent	excuse	resist
risk	fancy (= imagine)	imagine	suggest
finish	save	involve	understand
forgive	stop (= cease)		

- | | |
|---|---|
| (a) He admitted taking the bribe. | (b) You should avoid overeating. |
| (c) He detests waiting. | (d) I dislike standing here. |
| (e) We dreads getting old. | (f) I do not enjoy teaching. |
| (g) He kept crying. | (h) I do not want to risk getting wet. |
| (i) We couldn't help laughing. | (j) I don't find there anything worth buying. |
| (k) She is determined to get a seat even if it means standing is all the night. | |

Rule 5

यदि Verb के साथ possessive adjective या pronoun object आता है, तो उसके बाद Gerund का ही प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे:

He insisted on my reading the letter.

He resented on my refusing the entry.

- (a) Please forgive my / me calling you so early. (b) We can't prevent him wasting his own money.
(c) I indeed appreciate your giving me so much of your time.

Rule 6

Possessive case का प्रयोग Gerund के case में निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है :

We do not remember our mother's protesting against this proposal.

Apostrophe's को omit करके भी Gerund का निम्न प्रकार प्रयोग किया जाता है। यह अधिक उचित प्रयोग है।

We do not remember our mother protesting against this proposal.

Rule 7

Perfect Gerund जैसे: having worked, having spoken etc. का प्रयोग एक past action हेतु निम्न प्रकार किया जाता है:

- (a) He was accused of having deserted his ship. (b) He denied having been involved in the murder.

Rule 8

Verb : mind—special case

- (a) Infinitive के साथ कभी भी verb, mind का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

- (b) 'mind' का प्रयोग मुख्यतया Interrogative एवं negative वाक्यों में किया जाता है। जैसे :

(a) I don't mind waiting here.

(b) Would you mind waiting for some time?

- (c) 'Mind' के बाद सामान्यतया Gerund या noun/pronoun/possessive adjective के बाद Gerund का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे:

(a) I don't mind working here.

(b) I don't mind his sitting there.

(c) I didn't mind her living there.

Rule 9

Gerundial form के साथ कई noun संयुक्त होकर Compound noun की तरह प्रयुक्त होते हैं, इन्हें Gerund ही माना जाता है।

ऐसे Compound noun हैं

Sleeping child, freezing point, blotting paper, walking stick, a dancing master, dining room, retiring age etc.

Using Possessives with Gerunds : A note

Do we say "I can't stand him singing in the shower", or do we say "I can't stand his singing in the shower"? Well, you have to decide what you find objectionable: is it him, the fact that he is singing in the shower, or is it the singing that is being done by him that you can't stand? Chances are, it's the latter, it's the singing that belongs to him that bugs you. So, we would say, "I can't stand his singing in the shower."

On the other hand, do we say "I noticed your standing in the alley last night"? Probably not, because it's not the action that we noticed; it's the person. So, we'd say and write, instead, "I noticed you standing in the alley last night." Usually, however, when a noun or pronoun precedes a gerund, that noun or pronoun takes a possessive form. This is especially true of formal, academic writing.

Exceptions

- (a) When the noun preceding the gerund is modified by other words, use the common form of that noun, not the possessive.
 Federico was pleased by Carlos's making the Dean's List for the first time. **but**
 Federico was pleased by Carlos, his oldest son, making the Dean's List for the first time.
- (b) When the noun preceding the gerund is plural, collective, or abstract, use the common form of that noun, not the possessive.
 Professor Villa was amazed by her students working as hard as they did.
 The class working collaboratively was somebody else's idea.
 It was a case of old age getting the better of them.
- (c) There are certain situations, in which the possessive and the gerund create an awkward combination. This seems to be particularly true when indefinite pronouns are involved.
 I was shocked by somebody's making that remark.
 This would be greatly improved by saying, instead. I was shocked that somebody would make that remark.
- (d) This is also true when the "owner" of the gerund comes wrapped in a noun phrase:
 I was thankful for the guy next door shoveling snow from my drive way.
 It has been adopted from *Grammar Dimensions: Form Meaning, and Use*. Jan Frodesen and Janet Eyring.



TEST YOURSELF Exercises

01

Correct the following sentences :

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) She is good at write. | (2) He is afraid to lose the game. |
| (3) I cannot forget you for you helping me. | (4) It is totally useless to cry over the past misdeeds. |
| (5) He said, "Don't give up to try again." | (6) Would you mind to work with me? |
| (7) She is fond of being admire. | (8) I am sorry for me getting late. |
| (9) I am happy at your arrival at schedule time. | (10) To drink being his habit, we didn't go with him. |

02

Correct the following sentences :

- (1) I enjoy to travel.
- (2) Check the air before to start the generator.
- (3) It is no good to work with him.
- (4) Some people prefer to spend money to earn it.
- (5) I am thinking to leave my job and going back to my native place.
- (6) She said to me, "Don't forget to lock the door before go to bed."
- (7) I heard someone crying but I failed seeing anyone.
- (8) She has finished to wash the clothes.
- (9) I prefer to play football to reading my course books.
- (10) A novice can't learnt to spelling without being help.

03

Fill in the blanks with appropriate words:

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) Try being late for office. | (to avoid/avoiding) |
| (2) We have nothing to do but for her. | (waiting/to wait/wait) |
| (3) Does your wife object on holidays? | (to work/to working/have worked) |
| (4) Sita was charged and fined for without lights. | (driving/have driven/drove) |
| (5) When he spoke, it was very difficult for me | (to understood/to understand/ understanding) |
| (6) an aim, the hunter shot the lion. | (Took/ To Take/ Taking) |
| (7) his work, he went to market. | (Completing/Having completed/After complete) |
| (8) inside a bus is prohibited. | (To smoke/Smoking/Have smoking) |
| (9) The students refused the hostel. | (leaving/to leave/lefting) |
| (10) I had sooner than walk. | (ran/run/to run/running) |
| (11) Tell me this typical machine. | (operation/how to operate/operating system) |
| (12) Most of the students like cricket. | (to play/playing/have playing) |
| (13) He is too young this movie. | (watching/watch/to watch) |
| (14) He advised me, "You had better now." | (leaving/leave/left) |
| (15) The office needs proper | (cleanliness/cleaning/to clean) |



SOLUTIONS



TEST YOURSELF

Exercises

Solution TYE 1

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) She is good at writing. | (2) He is afraid of losing the game. |
| (3) I cannot forget you for your helping me. | (4) It is totally useless crying over the past misdeeds. |
| (5) He said, "Don't give up trying again." | (6) Would you mind working with me? |
| (7) She is fond of being admired. | (8) I am sorry for my getting late. |
| (9) I am happy at your arriving at schedule time. | (10) Drinking being his habit, we didn't go with him. |

Solution TYE 2

- (1) I enjoy travelling.
- (2) Check the air before starting the generator.
- (3) It is no good working with him.
- (4) Some people prefer spending money to earning it.
- (5) I am thinking of leaving my job and going back to my native place.
- (6) She said to me, "Don't forget to lock the door before going to bed."
- (7) I heard someone cry, but I failed to see anyone.
- (8) She has finished washing the clothes.
- (9) I prefer playing football to reading my course books.
- (10) A novice can't learn to spell without being helped.

Solution TYE 3

- | | | | |
|--------------------|-------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| (1) to avoid, | (2) wait, | (3) to working, | (4) driving, |
| (5) to understand, | (6) Taking, | (7) Having completed, | (8) Smoking, |
| (9) to leave, | (10) run, | (11) how to operate, | (12) playing, |
| (13) to watch, | (14) leave, | (15) cleaning. | |

REPORTED SPEECH

(Direct-Indirect Narrations)

वक्ता के कथन को Narration या Speech कहा जाता है।

किसी भी कथन को दो तरह से व्यक्त किया जा सकता है :

(i) Direct Speech

(ii) Indirect Speech

(i) **Direct Speech or Direct Narration** : जब वक्ता के कथन को 'ज्यों का त्यों' (हू-ब-हू) व्यक्त किया जाता है, तो उसे Direct Narration कहा जाता है। Direct Narration को Inverted Commas में बन्द किया जाता है।

(ii) **Indirect Speech or Indirect Narration** : जब वक्ता के कथन को अपने शब्दों में व्यक्त किया जाये तो उसे Indirect Narration कहा जाता है।



Indirect Narration में वक्ता के कथन का आशय नहीं बदलता है केवल कथन का तरीका बदल जाता है।

Reporter/Reporting Verb/Reported Speech/Verb of Reported Speech

Reporter : वक्ता को Reporter कहा जाता है।

Reporting Verb : वक्ता द्वारा जिस verb का प्रयोग किया जाता है उसे Reporting verb कहा जाता है।

Reported Speech : Inverted Commas ("...") के भीतर जो वाक्य रहता है उसे Reported speech कहा जाता है।

Verb of Reported Speech : Reported Speech (Inverted commas के अन्दर के वाक्य) की verb को Verb of Reported Speech कहा जाता है।

She said to me, "I am going to Jaipur."

इस वाक्य में She—Reporter है, said—Reporting verb है।

"I am going to Jaipur."—Reported speech है तथा am going — Reported Speech की verb है।



(a) Reported Speech हमेशा Capital letter से शुरू होता है एवं Inverted commas में बन्द रहता है।

(b) Direct से Indirect में बदलने पर Inverted commas हटा दिये जाते हैं।

Rules of Changing Direct Speech into Indirect Speech

Direct speech को Indirect Speech में परिवर्तन के नियमों के दो भागों में विभाजित किया जा सकता है :

- (1) **सामान्य नियम** : वे नियम सभी प्रकार के वाक्यों पर साधारणतया लागू होते हैं।
- (2) **विशेष नियम** : ये नियम अलग-अलग प्रकार के वाक्यों के लिए अलग-अलग हैं।

General Rules

Rule 1

Direct speech से Indirect Speech में परिवर्तन होने पर Inverted commas हट जाते हैं।

Rule 2

सबसे पहले Reporting verb का Tense देखें।

(a) यदि Direct narration में Reporting verb, Present या Future tense में है तो Indirect में परिवर्तन करते समय Reported speech के tense में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं किया जाता है।

(b) Reporting verb के Past, में होने की स्थिति में Rules आगे दिए गये हैं।

Rule 3

Indirect Speech में परिवर्तन होने पर Reported Speech के Persons का परिवर्तन निम्न प्रकार होता है :

(a) First person : Reporting verb के Subject के अनुसार बदलता है।

(b) Second person : Reporting verb के Object के अनुसार बदलता है।

(c) Third person : इसमें कोई परिवर्तन सामान्यतया नहीं होता है।

(d) Person : का परिवर्तन करते समय यह ध्यान रखें कि यदि person बहुवचन है तो परिवर्तन बहुवचन के अनुसार होगा। यदि person, possessive case में है तो परिवर्तन उसी अनुसार होगा। person का परिवर्तन Direct से Indirect में परिवर्तन का एक महत्वपूर्ण भाग है। ध्यान रखें: person का number एवं case नहीं बदला जाता है। Pronouns का परिवर्तन निम्न Table के अनुसार होता है।

निम्न Table को ध्यान से पढ़ें एवं समझें :

Forms of Personal Pronouns

Person	Nominative Case	Objective Case	Possessive Case	
			Possessive Adjective	Possessive Pronoun
I Person	I	me	my	mine
II Person	we	us	our	ours
	you	you	your	yours
III Person	he	him	his	his
	she	her	her	hers
	it	it	its	X
	they	them	their	theirs

Rule 4

यदि Reporting verb say, says, will say या said रहे तो Indirect speech में भी say, says, will say या said ही रहेगी लेकिन यदि Reporting verb के साथ 'to' लगा हो तो परिवर्तन निम्न प्रकार होता है :

say to — tell

says to — tells

said to — told



tell या told के बाद object आना आवश्यक है। जैसे

He tells, "Ram is playing".

Incorrect

He told, " I am going".

Incorrect

He told that he was going.

Incorrect

ये वाक्य गलत हैं, क्योंकि यहाँ Tells/ told के साथ कोई object नहीं है।

यहाँ tells की जगह says एवं told की जगह said का प्रयोग किया जाना चाहिए था।

Rule 5

Indirect Speech में बदलने पर reporting verb के बाद सामान्य वाक्यों में that का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

उक्त नियमों को ध्यान में रखते हुए निम्न वाक्यों का Direct से Indirect में परिवर्तन पर ध्यान दें

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| (a) He says, "I am going to Jaipur". | <i>Direct</i> |
| He says that he is going to Jaipur. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (b) She says to me, "You are writing a letter to him." | <i>Direct</i> |
| She tells me that I am writing a letter to him. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (c) They say to Ram, "We will go to Jaipur." | <i>Direct</i> |
| They tell Ram that they will go to Jaipur. | <i>Indirect</i> |

वाक्य (a) :

- सबसे पहले देखें कि Reporting verb का Tense क्या है। यह Present tense है। अतः Reporting Speech के Tense में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होगा।
- Reporting verb, says है। अतः Indirect में भी says ही रहेगी।
- Reported Speech में I, First person pronoun है जो कि Subject (he) के अनुसार बदलकर I का He हो जायेगा और am, verb बदलकर is हो जायेगी।

वाक्य (b) :

- सबसे पहले देखें कि Reporting verb का Tense क्या है। वाक्य की Reporting verb का tense, present है। अतः Reported Speech के tense में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होगा।
- Reporting verb, says to बदलकर tells हो जायेगी।
- Reported Speech में you एवं him, II एवं III person pronouns हैं। II person pronoun (you)—object के अनुसार बदलता है। अतः object 'me' के अनुसार I हो जायेगा। III person pronoun—him में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होगा। इस प्रकार के वाक्यों को Direct से Indirect में बदला जा सकता है। इस प्रकार के अन्य वाक्य देखें :

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| (a) Ramesh says to me, "I am your fast friend." | <i>Direct</i> |
| Ramesh tells me that he is my fast friend. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (b) I say to her, "I will not talk to you." | <i>Direct</i> |
| I tell her that I will not talk to her. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (c) He says to me, "I can teach you." | <i>Direct</i> |
| He tells me that he can teach me. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (d) Hari says to Shalu, "I am your brother and you are my sister." | <i>Direct</i> |
| Hari tells Shalu that he is her brother and she is his sister. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (e) He will say to Shalu, "I love you." | <i>Direct</i> |
| He will tell Shalu that he loves her. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (f) I say to Shyam, "I will help you". | <i>Direct</i> |
| I tell Shyam that I will help him. | <i>Indirect</i> |



यद्यपि Reported Speech का Tense नहीं बदलता है लेकिन Indirect Speech में pronoun या subject में परिवर्तन होने पर Reported Speech की verb का रूप बदल जाता है। वाक्य (a) में am का is, वाक्य (d) में am का is एवं वाक्य (e) में love का loves में परिवर्तन हुआ है।

Reporting Verb in the Past

Rule 6

यदि Reporting verb, Past tense में है तो Reported Speech में जो भी Tense होता है। इसका past हो जाता है। Reported Speech में Tense में परिवर्तन निम्न प्रकार होगा :

Tense of Reported Speech

Direct Narration

- (1) Present Indefinite
- (2) Present Continuous
- (3) Present Perfect
- (4) Present Perfect Continuous
- (5) Past Indefinite
- (6) Past Continuous
- (7) Past Perfect
- (8) Past Perfect Continuous

Indirect Narration

- Past Indefinite
- Past Continuous
- Past Perfect
- Past Perfect Continuous
- Past Perfect
- Past Perfect Continuous
- No change of tense
- No change of tense

Change in Future Sentences (Reported Speech)

- (1) Will / shall
- (2) Can
- (3) May
- (4) Could /should /would /might

- Would / should
- Could
- Might
- No change

Rule 7

जब Reporting verb, Past tense में है तो Reported Speech में आये कुछ शब्दों में परिवर्तन होता है। जैसे :

Direct Narration

- (1) This
- (2) These
- (3) Here
- (4) Hence
- (5) Hither
- (6) Now
- (7) Ago
- (8) Thus
- (9) Today
- (10) Tomorrow
- (11) Yesterday
- (12) Last week / month / year
- (13) The last fort night
- (14) The day before yesterday

Indirect Narration

- That
- Those
- There
- Thence
- Thither
- Then
- Before
- So
- That day
- The next day / the following day
- The previous day
- The previous week / month / year
- The previous fort night
- The day before the previous day

Look at the Following Solved Examples : TENSEWISE

Present Indefinite

- (1) He said to me, "I never eat sweets."
He told me that he never ate sweets.
- (2) He said to Hina, "I love you".
He told Hina that he loved her.

Direct
Indirect
Direct
Indirect

Present Continuous

- (1) Ram said to Shyam, "I am watching T.V".
Ram told Shyam that he was watching T.V.
- (2) They said to Rahim, "We are playing football."
They told Rahim that they were playing football.

Direct
Indirect
Direct
Indirect

Present Perfect

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| (1) Sita said, "I have already cooked". | <i>Direct</i> |
| Sita said that she had already cooked. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (2) Ram said to Shyam, "I have seen her today". | <i>Direct</i> |
| Ram told Shyam that he had seen her that day. | <i>Indirect</i> |

Present Perfect Continuous

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| (1) Sonu said to me, "I have been reading for an hour". | <i>Direct</i> |
| Sonu told me that he had been reading for an hour. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (2) Shyam said to Ram, "Sita has been playing since morning." | <i>Direct</i> |
| Shyam told Ram that Sita had been playing since morning. | <i>Indirect</i> |

Past Indefinite

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| (1) She said to Ram, "I went to Jaipur last week." | <i>Direct</i> |
| She told Ram that she had gone to Jaipur the previous week. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (2) Ramesh said to me, "I telephoned you yesterday." | <i>Direct</i> |
| Ramesh told me that he had telephoned me the previous day. | <i>Indirect</i> |

Past Continuous

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| (1) She said to me, "I was waiting for you." | <i>Direct</i> |
| She told me that she had been waiting for me. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (2) Shyam said to Sita, "You were playing tennis." | <i>Direct</i> |
| Shyam told Sita that she had been playing tennis. | <i>Indirect</i> |

Past Perfect

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| (1) He said to me, "I had completed my project". | <i>Direct</i> |
| He told me that he had completed his project. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (2) She said to Meena, "Ram had already visited Agra". | <i>Direct</i> |
| She told Meena that Ram had already visited Agra. | <i>Indirect</i> |

Past Perfect Continuous

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| (1) He said, "I had been playing chess for two hours." | <i>Direct</i> |
| He said that he had been playing chess for two hours. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (2) I said to you, "Ram had been waiting for you since 2 O'clock." | <i>Direct</i> |
| I told you that Ram had been waiting for you since 2 O'clock. | <i>Indirect</i> |

Future Indefinite

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| (1) Ram said to Meena, "I shall write a letter." | <i>Direct</i> |
| Ram told Meena that he would write a letter. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (2) Sita said to Kuku, "You will attend the party tomorrow." | <i>Direct</i> |
| Sita told Kuku that she would attend the party the next day. | <i>Indirect</i> |

Future Continuous

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| (1) Rahim said to Ram, "Sita will be waiting for you." | <i>Direct</i> |
| Rahim told Ram that Sita would be waiting for him (Ram). | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (2) I said to her, "I shall be writing an essay". | <i>Direct</i> |
| I told her that I should be writing an essay. | <i>Indirect</i> |

Future Perfect

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| (1) Sita said to Ram, "I will have completed my work". | <i>Direct</i> |
| Sita told Ram that she would have completed her work. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (2) She said to me, "Ram will have vacated the room". | <i>Direct</i> |
| She told me that Ram would have vacated the room. | <i>Indirect</i> |

Future Perfect Continuous

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| (1) Nisha said to me, "I shall have been reading the book." | <i>Direct</i> |
| Nisha told me that she would have been reading the book. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (2) Chanchal said to Ekta, "We shall have been visiting the fair tomorrow". | <i>Direct</i> |
| Chanchal told Ekta that they would have been visiting the fair the next day. | <i>Indirect</i> |
- उपरोक्त वाक्यों में हमने सभी 12 Tenses के उदाहरण दिये हैं। आपने देखा कि Past Perfect, Past Perfect Continuous के वाक्यों के Tense में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं हुआ है।



उक्त नियम के अनुसार यदि Reporting verb, Past tense में है तो Reported speech के वाक्य का Tense, नियमानुसार परिवर्तित किया जाता है। इस नियम के निम्न अपवाद हैं। यह Important बिन्दु है।

Rule 8

यदि Reported Speech में कोई Universal Truth (सर्वकालिक सत्य), Proverb (कहावत), Mathematical fact (गणितीय तथ्य), Historical fact (ऐतिहासिक तथ्य), Habitual Act (आदतन क्रिया) या कोई Morality (नैतिकता) का सन्दर्भ हो तो ऐसे वाक्यों को जब Indirect में परिवर्तित करते हैं तो Reporting verb के Past Tenses में होने पर भी इनका Tense नहीं बदलता है। Look at the following sentences :

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| (1) He said, "The sun sets in the west." | <i>Direct</i> |
| He said that the sun sets in the west. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (2) He said, "Man is Mortal." | <i>Direct</i> |
| He said that the man is mortal. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (3) The teacher said, "India became Republic on 26th January 1950". | <i>Direct</i> |
| The teacher said that India became Republic on 26th January, 1950. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (4) She said to me, "Honesty is the best policy." | <i>Direct</i> |
| She told me that honesty is the best policy. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (5) She said, "Two and two is four." | <i>Direct</i> |
| She said that two and two is four. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (6) He said, "London is the capital of U.K." | <i>Direct</i> |
| He said that London is the capital of U.K. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (7) He said, "Mr. Narendra Modi is the P.M. of India." | <i>Direct</i> |
| He said that Mr. Narendra Modi is the P.M. of India. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (8) He said, "Kashmir is in the north of India". | <i>Direct</i> |
| He said that Kashmir is in the north of India. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (9) He said to me, "I go for a walk daily." | <i>Direct</i> |
| He told me that he goes for a walk daily.(Habit) | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (10) Ram said to me, "I get up early in the morning daily." | <i>Direct</i> |
| Ram told me that he gets up early in the morning daily.(Habit) | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (11) Radha said to her, "I go to office at 10 O'clock." | <i>Direct</i> |
| Radha told her that she goes to office at 10 O'clock. | <i>Indirect</i> |

- (12) The saint said, "Man proposes and God disposes." *Direct*
 The saint said that man proposes and God disposes. *Indirect*
- (13) The teacher said, "Something is better than nothing." *Direct*
 The teacher said that something is better than nothing. *Indirect*
- (14) The teacher said, "A stitch in time saves nine." *Direct*
 The teacher said that a stitch in time saves nine. *Indirect*

वाक्य संख्या (6 एवं 7) में बताये गए तथ्य में यदि कोई परिवर्तन नहीं हुआ है, तो हम Reported Speech के Tense में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं करते हैं। यदि परिवर्तन हो गया हो तो हमें Tense में परिवर्तन करना होगा।

Specific Rules

Interrogative Sentences

Interrogative Sentences को सामान्य रूप से दो भागों में विभाजित किया जाता है :

- (1) ऐसे प्रश्न जिनका Answer—Yes या No में दिया जा सकता है। जैसे :
- (a) Are you happy? Yes or No
 (b) Do you know me? Yes or No
 (c) Will you accompany me? Yes or No
- (2) ऐसे प्रश्न जिनका Answer—Yes या No में नहीं दिया जा सकता है। These are also called 'Wh questions'.
 ऐसे Interrogative sentences ऐसे प्रश्न होते हैं जिनका Answer, Yes या No में नहीं दिया जा सकता है। ऐसे प्रश्नों में कुछ जानकारी दी गई होती है। जैसे :
- (a) Where do you live? (b) What is your name? (c) How are you?
- इस तरह के प्रश्न Wh-words, जैसे : What, Where, Which, Who, How, etc. से शुरू होते हैं।

Rule 1

प्रथम प्रकार के Interrogative Sentence जो Auxiliary verb से शुरू होते हैं जिनका Answer, Yes/No में दिया जा सकता है उनको Indirect में परिवर्तित करते समय 'that' की जगह if या whether का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

Rule 2

Indirect Speech में Interrogative Sentences को Assertive Sentence में बदला जाता है अर्थात् Indirect Speech में परिवर्तन होने के बाद, वाक्य एक प्रश्न के रूप में नहीं रहता है तथा वाक्य के अन्त में लगा Question Mark (?) भी हट जाता है। वाक्य का Tense एवं Pronoun पूर्व में बताए नियमानुसार बदले जाते हैं।

Rule 3

Reporting verb ; say, says, said की जगह ask, asks, asked प्रयोग किया जाता है। कई बार ask की जगह Inquire या enquire of का प्रयोग किया जाता है। enquire of का प्रयोग तब किया जाता है जबकि इसके बाद object (जैसे He enquired of me) लगता है।

Look at the following solved examples :

- (1) She said to me, "Are you going to college?" *Direct*
 She asked me whether I was going to college. *Indirect*
- (2) She said to Shyam, "Have you an extra copy?" *Direct*
 She asked Shyam if he had an extra copy. *Indirect*
- (3) He said, "Am I looking smart?" *Direct*
 He asked if he was looking smart. *Indirect*
- (4) He said to me, "Can you write a letter?" *Direct*
 He asked me if I could write a letter. *Indirect*
- (5) She said to me, "Will you help me?" *Direct*
 She asked me if I would help her. *Indirect*

Important

Interrogative वाक्य को Direct से Indirect में बदलते समय इसे Assertive बनाना आवश्यक है। छात्रों को यह कठिन कार्य लगता है। देखें: एक Interrogative वाक्य में verb हमेशा Subject के पहले आती है। जैसा कि वाक्य संख्या 1, 2, 3 से स्पष्ट होता है

(a) Are you going?

(b) Have you an extra copy?

(c) Am I looking smart?

इन वाक्यों को Assertive बनाने के लिए verb को subject (नये pronoun) के बाद रखना होता है एवं वाक्य का Tense Reporting verb यदि Past Tense में हो तो पीछे बताये नियमानुसार बदलना होता है। अतः Are you going को I was going में बदलना होगा। इसी प्रकार से Have you an extra copy को He had an extra copy तथा Am I looking smart को He was looking smart में बदलना होगा। Pronoun का परिवर्तन पूर्व में बताए गए नियमानुसार होगा तथा Tense में भी परिवर्तन बताए नियमानुसार किया जाएगा।

Rule 4

यदि Interrogative Sentence के साथ वाक्य में उसका उत्तर भी जुड़ा हुआ है तो ध्यान रखें, Yes में Answer देते समय assertive में देना होगा एवं No में Answer देते समय Negative में Answer देना होगा। जैसे :

(1) She said to me, "Can you solve this question?" "No", I said.

She asked me if I could solve that question, I said, I couldn't or I replied in negative.

(2) He said to me, "Do you know me?" "I said, "Yes".

He asked me if I knew him, I said, I did or I replied in affirmative.

Rule 5

ऐसे Interrogative Sentences जो Wh-Words से शुरू होते हैं। (जिनका Answer Yes/No में नहीं दिया जा सकता) ऐसे वाक्यों को जब Indirect में परिवर्तित करते हैं तो Conjunction; that/ if / whether नहीं लगता है बल्कि Wh-Words ही Conjunction का कार्य करते हैं जैसे हमने पूर्व में बताया है। Indirect Speech में वाक्य Interrogative में नहीं रहता है उसे Assertive बनाना आवश्यक है। वाक्य में आये Pronoun एवं Tense में परिवर्तन पूर्व में बताए गए नियमानुसार ही होता है।

Look at the following solved examples :

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| (1) He said to her, "What do you want?" | <i>Direct</i> |
| He asked her what she wanted. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (2) He said to me, "Why are you happy?" | <i>Direct</i> |
| He asked me why I was happy. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (3) Ram said to Hari, "Where do you live?" | <i>Direct</i> |
| Ram asked Hari where he lived. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (4) She said to Hari, "When will you come?" | <i>Direct</i> |
| She asked Hari when he would come. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (5) Ram said to Sita, "Who are you?" | <i>Direct</i> |
| Ram asked Sita who she was. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (6) Sita said to Mohan, "How many cars have you?" | <i>Direct</i> |
| Sita asked Mohan how many cars he had. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (7) I said to Shyam, "Which class do you read in?" | <i>Direct</i> |
| I asked Shyam which class he read in. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (8) I said to the teacher, "How many students are there in the school?" | <i>Direct</i> |
| I asked the teacher how many students there were in the school. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (9) He said to me, "Which team won the match?" | <i>Direct</i> |
| He asked me which team had won the match. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (10) He said to me, "What is your planning?" | <i>Direct</i> |
| He asked me what my planning was. | <i>Indirect</i> |

Rule 6

Shall I/We से शुरू होने वाले प्रश्न

(A) इस तरह के प्रश्नों से जब कोई सूचना (information) हो या कोई Speculation हो। जैसे :

(i) **Direct** : "Shall I ever see her again ?", he said .

Speculation

Indirect : He wondered if he would ever see her again.

(ii) **Direct** : "When shall I know the result of the election?" Ram asked.

Indirect : Ram asked when he would know the result of the election.

इस तरह के वाक्यों में shall को would में परिवर्तित किया जाता है।

(B) जब कोई सलाह या प्रार्थना की गई हो। जैसे :

(i) **Direct** : He said to the customer, "Shall we despatch these letters?"

Indirect : He asked the customer if they should despatch those letters.

(ii) **Direct** : "What shall I say father ?" he said.

Indirect : He asked his father what he should say.

इस तरह के वाक्यों में सलाह या प्रार्थना का भाव रहता है। यहाँ Indirect speech में shall को should में परिवर्तित किया जाता है। जब इस तरह के वाक्यों में choice पूछी जाती है। जैसे :

(i) **Direct** : "Shall I lock the room or leave it unlocked ?" Rajesh said.

Indirect : Rajesh asked whether he should lock the room or leave it unlocked.

इस तरह के वाक्यों में whether का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

(C) जब Shall का प्रयोग वाक्य में 'offer' (प्रस्ताव) के सन्दर्भ में किया जाता है। जैसे :

(i) **Direct** : "Shall I bring you something to eat?" she said.

Indirect : She offered to bring me something to eat.

(D) जब Shall का प्रयोग एक सुझाव के अर्थ में हो। जैसे :

(i) **Direct** : "Shall we meet again tomorrow?" he said.

Indirect : He suggested to meet again the next day.

इस तरह के वाक्यों में suggested का प्रयोग करके Indirect speech में परिवर्तित किया जाता है।

Rule 7

Will you / would you / could you से शुरू होने वाले प्रश्नों को Indirect speech में परिवर्तित करते समय, वाक्य का भाव देखकर Reporting verb में परिवर्तित किया जाता है। जैसे :

(i) **Direct** : He said, "Will you be there on Monday?" (Ordinary question)

Indirect : He asked if he would be there on Monday.

(ii) **Direct** : He shouted, "Will you keep silence?"

Indirect : He shouted at me to keep silence. Or He ordered me to keep silence.

(iii) **Direct** : He asked, "Would you like to do job in USA?"

Indirect : He asked if I would like to do job in USA.

(iv) **Direct** : He said, "Would you like a lift?"

Indirect : He offered me a lift.

(v) **Direct** : He said, "Would you like to have a drink?"

Indirect : He invited me for a drink. Or He offered me a drink.

Imperative Sentences

Imperative Sentence ऐसे वाक्य हैं जिनमें आदेश (Order), निर्देश (Direction, Command) प्रार्थना (Request), सुझाव (Suggestion), सलाह (Advice) का भाव निहित रहता है। ऐसे वाक्यों को Indirect Narration में परिवर्तित करते समय निम्न नियमों का ध्यान रखें :

Rule 1

Reporting verb को वाक्य के भाव के अनुसार Order, Command, Advice, Suggest, Request, Warn etc. में परिवर्तित करें।

Rule 2

Conjunction 'that' की जगह 'to' का प्रयोग करें। यदि वाक्य Negative है तो 'not to' का प्रयोग करें।

Rule 3

वाक्य में यदि Please, Kindly जैसे शब्द हैं तो इनको Indirect Speech में नहीं रखें। वाक्य के भावार्थ के अनुसार Request का प्रयोग किया जाने से ये स्वतः ही वाक्य के भाव में आ जाते हैं।

Look at the following solved examples :

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| (1) She said to Ramu, "Please bring my book." | <i>Direct</i> |
| She requested Ramu to bring her book. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (2) She said to me, "Have a glass of milk". | <i>Direct</i> |
| She asked me to have a glass of milk. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (3) Ram said to Sita, "Take medicines regularly." | <i>Direct</i> |
| Ram advised Sita to take medicines regularly. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (4) I said to Hari, "Don't pluck the flowers". | <i>Direct</i> |
| I ordered Hari not to pluck the flowers. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (5) The SP said to the SHO, "Shoot the robber". | <i>Direct</i> |
| The SP ordered the SHO to shoot the robber. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (6) The Principal said to the students, "Get out from office." | <i>Direct</i> |
| The Principal ordered the students to get out from office. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (7) He said, "Follow my instructions". | <i>Direct</i> |
| He ordered me to follow his instructions. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (8) He said to Sarla, "Lend me your Physics book". | <i>Direct</i> |
| He requested Sarla to lend him her Physics book. | <i>Indirect</i> |



Negative Imperative वाक्यों में जो Do not या Don't जैसे शब्दों से शुरू होते हैं उनमें जैसा हमने पहले बताया है, 'not to' का प्रयोग करते हैं। 'not to' की जगह forbade का प्रयोग भी किया जाता है, लेकिन forbade के साथ वाक्य में not का प्रयोग नहीं करना है, क्योंकि forbade स्वयं ही Negative है, इसका अर्थ है मना करना। जैसे :

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| (1) The teacher said to Hari, "Don't write on the table." | <i>Direct</i> |
| The teacher forbade Hari to write on the table. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| Or | |
| The teacher instructed Hari not to write on the table. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (2) The Principal said, "Don't make a noise students." | <i>Direct</i> |
| The Principal forbade the students to make a noise. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| Or | |
| The Principal instructed the students not to make a noise. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (3) She said to me, "Don't park your car here." | <i>Direct</i> |
| She forbade me to park my car there. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| Or | |
| She asked me not to park my car there. | <i>Indirect</i> |

Emphatic Imperative (Use of 'Do')

कई बार Imperative वाक्यों को आग्रहपूर्ण (Emphatic) बनाने के लिए 'Do' का प्रयोग किया जाता है, यह 'Do' का प्रयोग मात्र अधिक आग्रह या विनम्रता को प्रदर्शित करने हेतु प्रयुक्त होता है। तो ऐसे वाक्यों को Indirect में बदलते समय 'Do' को हटा दिया जाता है एवं ऊपर बताए गए नियमानुसार वाक्य को Indirect में बदला जाता है। जैसे :

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| (1) He said to me, "Do have a cup of coffee, please". | <i>Direct</i> |
| He requested me to have a cup of coffee. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (2) She said to me, "Do come again." | <i>Direct</i> |
| She requested me to come again. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (3) Rahim said to her, "Do have a seat, please." | <i>Direct</i> |
| Rahim requested her to have a seat. | <i>Indirect</i> |

Imperative and Tag Question

कई बार Imperative Sentence के साथ एक Tag Question लगा रहता है, Tag Question का प्रयोग अपनी बात का महत्त्व बढ़ाने के लिए अथवा ध्यान आकर्षित कर, उत्तर पाने की आकांक्षा के लिए किया जाता है। इस प्रकार के वाक्यों को Indirect में बदलते समय, Tag Question को महत्त्व नहीं दिया जाता है। शेष वाक्य को पहले बताये नियमानुसार Indirect में बदलते हैं। जैसे :

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| (1) He said to me, "Open the door, will you?" | <i>Direct</i> |
| He asked me to open the door. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (2) She Said to Ram, "Bring me a glass of water, won't you?" | <i>Direct</i> |
| She asked Ram to bring her a glass of water. | <i>Indirect</i> |
| (3) The leader said to us, "Caste your votes, will you?" | <i>Direct</i> |
| The leader advised us to caste our votes. | <i>Indirect</i> |

Sentences with 'Let'

(A) Let से शुरू होने वाले वाक्य भी एक प्रकार के Imperative वाक्य ही होते हैं। Let से कई अर्थ निकलते हैं। सुझाव (Suggestion), प्रस्ताव (Proposal) हेतु Let का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार होता है :

- | |
|---|
| (1) She said to me, "Let us go to market". |
| She suggested to me to go to market. |
| <i>Or</i> |
| She suggested to me that we should go to market. |
| (2) He said to me, "Let us purchase this house". |
| He proposed to me to purchase that house. |
| <i>Or</i> |
| He proposed to me that we should purchase that house. |



- (a) Let से शुरू होने वाले वाक्यों में Imperative वाक्य की तरह 'to' का प्रयोग भी उपरोक्तानुसार कर सकते हैं। जब should का प्रयोग किया जाता है तो Conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग suggested/proposed के बाद करना होगा।
- (b) यदि Reporting verb—said है तो केवल Suggested या Proposed का प्रयोग होता है एवं Reporting verb, said to होने पर suggested to या proposed to का प्रयोग होगा।
- | |
|---|
| (1) She said, "Let him complete his work first." |
| She suggested that he should complete his work first. |
| (2) He said, "Let me solve this problem first." |
| He suggested that he should solve that problem first. |

(B) Let से व्यक्ति की इच्छा (Wish) भी व्यक्त की जाती है। ऐसे वाक्यों में Reporting verb, wish का प्रयोग करना चाहिए। जैसे :

- (1) The student said, "Let me take food".
The student wished that he should take food.
- (2) The lady said, "Let me have an ice cream pack".
The lady wished that she should have an ice cream pack.
- (3) She said, "Let him be my friend".
She wished that he should be her friend.

(C) Let से Order/Request का भाव भी व्यक्त किया जाता है। ऐसे वाक्यों में Reporting verb, order या request का प्रयोग करते हैं। ऐसे वाक्यों में जब अनुमति माँगी या दी जाती है तो to allow का प्रयोग conjunction की तरह किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (1) The boy said to the teacher, "Let me go home now."
The boy requested the teacher to allow him to go home then.
- (2) The Principal said to the peon, "Let the students come in".
The Principal ordered the peon to allow the students come in.



Let से शुरू होने वाले वाक्यों में कभी-कभी Let को to let में बदलकर Indirect Speech में परिवर्तन किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (1) I said to her, "Let me go to market" I requested her to let me go to market.
- (2) She said to Shyam, "Let him go to Jaipur." She requested Shyam to let him go to Jaipur.

Optative Sentences

(A) ऐसे वाक्य जिनमें Good wishes, प्रार्थना, अभिवादन या इच्छा व्यक्त की जाती है, Optative Sentences कहलाते हैं।

(a) यदि वाक्य में कोई Good wish की गई हो तो Reporting verb को Wished या Prayed में बदला जाता है तथा that, conjunction का प्रयोग किया जाता है तथा वाक्य को Assertive sentence में बदलते हैं। जैसे :

- (1) My mother said to my friend, "May you live long !"
My mother wished my friend that he might live long.
- (2) She said to Sita, "May God bless you with a son!"
She prayed that God might bless Sita with a son.
- (3) She said, "God grant you success !"
She prayed that God might grant me success.



(a) यहाँ might के साथ verb की I form लगती है।

(b) वाक्य (3) में May का प्रयोग नहीं हुआ है तब भी Indirect में might का प्रयोग किया गया है। May की existence ऐसे वाक्यों में मानी जाती है।

(B) यदि वाक्य में Good morning, good evening, good day इत्यादि का प्रयोग अभिवादनस्वरूप किया गया है तो Reporting verb की जगह Wished का प्रयोग किया जाता है। यदि 'sir' को या जिससे अभिवादन किया गया है, वह भी Inverted commas में है तो उसे बाहर निकाल लिया जाता है। जैसे :

- (1) He said to the teacher, "Good morning." He wished the teacher good morning.
- (2) She said, "Good morning, sir !" She wished the sir good morning.
- (3) I said, "Good afternoon, father !" I wished my father good afternoon.

(C) यदि वाक्य में farewell (विदाई) सूचक शब्द जैसे : Good bye, farewell इत्यादि का प्रयोग किया गया हो तो Reporting verb—bade का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे :

- (1) She said to me, "Good bye". She bade me good bye.
- (2) The leader said, "Farewell my friends." The leader bade his friends farewell.

Exclamatory Sentences

ऐसे वाक्य जो अफसोस, घृणा, दुख, आश्चर्य, प्रसन्नता, शाबाशी देने का भाव व्यक्त करते हैं, Exclamatory sentences कहलाते हैं।

- इस तरह के वाक्यों को Indirect में बदलते समय, वाक्य के भावार्थ के अनुसार exclaimed with joy, exclaimed with sorrow, exclaimed with surprise, exclaimed with applause, exclaimed with anger, exclaimed with contempt जैसी Reporting verb का प्रयोग किया जाता है।
- Conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग किया जाता है।
- Alas, Bravo, Oh, Wow, Wah, Hurrah जैसे शब्दों को Indirect बनाते समय हटा दिया जाता है।
- Exclamatory वाक्यों को Assertive वाक्य में बदल दिया जाता है।
- यदि वाक्य में कोई इच्छा (जैसे : If I were a bird, If I were the P.M.) प्रकट की गई हो तो Reporting verb, wished का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

Look at the following solved examples :

- She said, "If I were a bird !"
She wished that she would be a bird.
- He said, "If I were young again !"
He wished that he would be young again.
- Ram said, "Alas ! I have been ruined."
Ram exclaimed with sorrow that he had been ruined.
- The lady said, "Oh ! my dog is dead."
The lady exclaimed with sorrow that her dog was dead.
- He said, "What a beautiful girl Sita is !"
He exclaimed with praise that Sita was a beautiful girl.
- We said, "What a nice place it is !"
We exclaimed with surprise that it was a nice place.
- They said, "What a great fall !"
They exclaimed with applause that it was a great fall.
- The captain said, "Well done! my friends."
The captain exclaimed with applause that his friends had done well.
- The player said, "Hurrah ! we have won".
The player exclaimed with joy that they had won.
- He said, "Wow ! what a pleasant weather it is!"
He exclaimed with joy that it was a very pleasant weather.



(a) जिन वाक्यों में I were, He were जैसे वाक्य एक इच्छा प्रकट करते हैं, उन्हें Indirect Speech में बदलते समय would be का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

(b) Exclamatory वाक्यों को Assertive वाक्यों में बदलते हैं। निम्न वाक्यों पर ध्यान देने से यह समझ में आ जायेगा।

Exclamatory

- What a beautiful girl she is!
- What a nice place it is!
- What a great fall!
- What an idea!
- What a fool you are!
- How dark the night is!

Assertive

- She is beautiful girl.
It is a very nice place.
It is a great fall.
It is a great idea.
You are a great fool.
It is a very dark night.

कुछ अन्य Exclamatory वाक्य देखें जो अधूरे से लगते हैं :

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) He said to me, "Congratulations!" | He congratulated me. |
| (2) The teacher said to the student, "Stupid!" | The teacher called the student, stupid. |
| (3) She said, "Thank you!" | She thanked me. |
| (4) They said to us, "Welcome!" | They welcomed us. |
| (5) I said to her, "Happy Christmas!" | I wished her happy Christmas. |

Miscellaneous Sentences

(A) जब वाक्यों में व्यक्ति का नाम **Inverted commas** के अन्दर **Reported Speech** में सम्मिलित होता है। जैसे :

- (1) He said, "Rajeev, I am waiting for you."
He told Rajeev that he was waiting for him (Rajeev).
- (2) She said, "Take your purse, Tony."
She asked Tony to take his purse.
- (3) Sheela said, "Brother, please help me."
Sheela requested her brother to help her.
- (4) He said, "Kuku, what are you doing?"
He asked Kuku what she was doing.

ऐसे वाक्यों में व्यक्ति के नाम को Reporting verb के साथ लगाकर शेष वाक्य को पूर्व बताए गए नियमों के अनुसार Indirect Speech में बदला जाता है।

(B) जब वाक्यों में 'Sir', 'Madam' का प्रयोग **Inverted commas** के अन्दर **Reported Speech** के साथ किया गया हो। जैसे :

- (1) He said, "May I leave now, Madam ?"
He asked the Madam if he might leave then.
- (2) She said, "May I attend the class, Sir ?"
She asked respectfully if she might attend the class.

(C) कुछ वाक्यों में **Well, Okay, You, See, You know** का प्रयोग किया गया होता है। जैसे :

- (1) The receptionist said, "Well, what can I do for you ?"
The receptionist asked politely what she could do for me.
- (2) 'Okay', she said, "I will consider your proposal."
She said that she would consider my proposal.

(D) वाक्यों में **Must** का प्रयोग एक **future action** या **Present action** में मजबूरी को प्रकट करता है, तो ऐसे वाक्यों को Indirect Speech में बदलते समय **Must** को **had to** में बदलते हैं। जैसे :

- (1) She said, "I must leave at once."
She said that she had to leave at once.
- (2) Ramesh said, "He must go to Jaipur tomorrow."
Ramesh said that he had to go to Jaipur the next day.

(E) **Must not** एवं **Need not** वाले वाक्य में इन शब्दों में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। जैसे :

- (1) He said, "You must not speak to anyone."
He said that I must not speak to anyone.
- (2) She said, "You need not purchase this book."
She said that I need not purchase that book.

(F) **Would, Should, Could, Might** वाले वाक्यों में इन शब्दों में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। जैसे :

- He said, "She would/ should/ could/ might attend the party".
He said that she would/ should /could /might attend the party.

- (G) वाक्य में यदि 'had to' का प्रयोग है तो वह had had to में परिवर्तित हो जाता है। यहाँ had to एक urgency को बताता है। जैसे :

The poet said, "After the function, I had to rush to my house."

The poet said that after the function he had to rush to his house.



यहाँ had to का प्रयोग Past Prefect Tense की तरह नहीं किया गया है।

- (H) **Joint Sentences** : जब कई वाक्य एक साथ होते हैं। जैसे :

- (1) She said, "I am a girl. I cannot stay here in night".

She said that she was a girl and added that she could not stay there in night.

- (2) Ramesh said, "Sita is going to Jaipur tomorrow. I can also go with her."

Ramesh said that Sita was going to Jaipur next day and he could also go with her.

- (3) Payal said, "I will not marry this year. I am preparing for IAS examinations".

Payal said that she would not marry that year and further added that she was preparing for IAS examinations.

- (I) इस प्रकार के वाक्यों को दूसरे वाक्य के लिए added, further added या and शब्द का प्रयोग कर, पूर्व में बताये गए नियमानुसार Indirect Speech में बदला जाता है। जैसे :

- (1) He said, "Do you know who is he ?"

He asked me if I knew who he was.

- (2) She said, "Can you find, where are the keys?"

She asked me if I could find where the keys were.

ऐसे वाक्यों में दोनों वाक्यों को ही Reporting verb को Tense के अनुसार बदला जाता है। जैसे :

- (3) He said, "Sarala is coming, wait here."

He said that Sarala was coming and asked me to wait there.

- (4) He said, "Where is your purse, I have lost mine."

He asked me where my purse was and added that he had lost his.

- (5) My father said, "I am going to office, where are you going?"

My father said that he was going to office and wanted to know where I was going.

इस प्रकार के वाक्यों को अलग-अलग हमने पूर्व Indirect Speech में आसानी से परिवर्तित किया है। जब इस तरह के वाक्य एक साथ आए तो पूर्व में बताए गए नियमानुसार ही परिवर्तित करें एवं बीच में added, wanted to know etc का प्रयोग करें। जैसे :

- (6) The leader said, "Friends, my country men, lend me your support. I will take care of your problems."

The leader addressed the people as friends, my countrymen and requested them to lend him their support. He further added that he would take care of their problems.

- (7) "Where are you going Sheela ? Come here and we will talk about our marriage", said he.

He asked Sheela where she was going and added that they would talk about their marriage.

- (8) Sita said to Ram, "No, No, I can't play with you. My father has forbidden me to play with you."

Sita told Ram that she could not play with him as her father had forbidden her to play with him.